

# *SHORT FRENCH GRAMMAR*

---

*C. H. Grandgent*

*Ulrich Middeldorf*

Department of French







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2014

Heath's Modern Language Series

---

A SHORT  
FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

C. H. GRANDGENT

PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY,  
FORMERLY DIRECTOR OF MODERN LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION  
IN THE BOSTON PUBLIC SCHOOLS



D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS  
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

*Copyright, 1894,*

By C. H. GRANDGENT.



## PREFACE.



THE world is so full of French grammars that the author who brings out a new one really owes the public some kind of an apology. Hence, in putting this little volume on the market, I feel bound to excuse its existence as best I can, by calling attention to any features that may distinguish it from other books. I will say, then, that my purpose in writing this *Grammar* has been to produce an elementary work that should combine the following advantages: (1) brevity without undue conciseness, (2) treatment of the subject from the standpoint of the American pupil, (3) a strictly systematic arrangement, and (4) a scientific but easily intelligible study of French pronunciation.

**Brevity.** — Although this book is very small, readers will find that the various parts of speech are discussed here with unusual fulness. My aim has been, in fact, to attain brevity, not through compression, but through the exclusion of useless and extraneous matter. Vocabulary and the translation of idioms belong to the dictionary, not to the grammar. The same thing is true of invariable words — prepositions, conjunctions, interjections, and adverbs; although the description of the *use* of some of these forms lies naturally in the province of syntax. As to syntax itself, I do not believe that very much of it can ever be learned from a text-book: the student must, in the main, become acquainted with constructions through his own observation of the spoken and written language. Only when he is tolerably familiar with the subject will he be able to make intelligent use of a complete set of rules, which will then help him to give definiteness and system to the knowledge he has acquired. In my *Grammar*, therefore, no attempt has been made to furnish anything like a thorough-going presentation of French syntax; invariable words have, for the most part, been left out of account; but the agreement of participles, the values of the

moods and tenses, the agreement and position of adjectives, the uses of articles, and some other important matters are treated in such a way as at least to indicate to the pupil the direction in which he should turn his attention.

**Point of view.**— Nearly all French grammars that I know are constructed without regard to the intelligence, habits, and previous training of the American schoolboy; most of them, indeed, are little more than collections of rules taken from French grammars written by Frenchmen for French children. Hence our pupils, on beginning the language, are confronted with a strange style, a foreign conception of grammatical principles, and a new, confusing, and often senseless terminology; for a long while they cannot get their bearings, and the knowledge they have gained through the study of English is of no benefit to them. Experience has convinced me that the use of such expressions as “partitive article,” “past definite,” and “past indefinite” is a source of endless misunderstanding, and almost invariably causes the absolute waste of a great deal of valuable time. I have tried to make my book, as far as possible, a natural continuation of the ordinary grammar school course. At every step I have taken pains to compare French with English, so that students may readily grasp the characteristics of the new language and understand more thoroughly than ever before the structure of their own. The common nomenclature of English grammar has been used as far as it goes; for the imperfect and preterit I have ventured to coin new names, “descriptive past” and “narrative past,” which designate the nature of both and the function of each. The French equivalents of the English “potential mood” have been carefully explained.

**Arrangement.**— As methods of modern language teaching improve, the grammar will doubtless come to be regarded more and more as a guide and reference-book, and less and less as a collection of detached lessons. Moreover, whatever be the use to which the grammar is put, no really intelligent work can be expected of a class unless the French inflections are so displayed and the principles of the language are so exposed as to show clearly their relations to one another. For these reasons I have tried to arrange my *Grammar* according to a strictly logical scheme. I begin with verbs and end with nouns. In attacking

a strange language, a student can do but little until he has been introduced to the highly inflected parts of speech, but he can accomplish a great deal without having made any special study of words that are nearly or quite invariable.

**Pronunciation.**—It seems to me that the time has come for a more scientific description of pronunciation in popular text-books. I have attempted to furnish this without the use of any unfamiliar terms and with almost no mention of the positions of the unseen vocal organs. I have, in fact, in characterizing the individual French sounds, relied almost entirely on English key-words, but these words have been selected with such care that the correspondences are sufficiently accurate. Of course my descriptions are offered as a supplement to oral instruction by the teacher, not as a substitute for it. Throughout the *Grammar* the pronunciation of French words and inflected forms has been clearly and consistently indicated. My phonetic notation is exceedingly simple: an intelligent person who knows French can read the transcription without any explanation; while beginners will, I think, find it a great help in studying French speech. To any phoneticians who may think I ought to have given less importance to the written forms, I would say that I agree entirely with the opinion expressed by H. Morf, *Phonetische Studien*, VI., 1, pp. 112-113, on the comparative value of pronunciation and spelling to the student of a foreign language; for Americans, indeed, isolated as they are, he might have put the case still more strongly.

**Authorities consulted.**—Wishing to make my little book as original as possible, I have used other grammars very sparingly. Nevertheless, I got some help from Da Costa's *Cours supérieur* and Edgren's *Compendious French Grammar*, and I found some welcome suggestions in *Notes on the Teaching of French*, by Professor F. C. de Sumichrast (contained in *Methods of Teaching Modern Languages*, published by D. C. Heath & Co.). I take pleasure in acknowledging my indebtedness to Professor Sheldon, of Harvard, who was kind enough to read and criticise my manuscript; I am under great obligations, also, to Professor Lang, of Yale, Professor Matzke, of Stanford University, and Professor Rambeau, of Johns Hopkins, who assisted me in revising the proofs. For pronunciation I have consulted the well-known

works of Paul Passy, Franz Beyer, and Rousselot, the still unfinished dictionary of Hatzfeld and Darmesteter, and Ph. Wagner's *Französische Quantität*; in the matter of assimilation I have followed G. Rollin, *Phonetische Studien*, VI., 2, p. 220, and Jean Passy, *Maître phonétique*, February, 1893, pp. 28-29. In a few cases where Paul Passy is at variance with other authorities—for instance, as to the quality of the vowel in *mais* and in *ces, les, mes, ses, tes*—I have not chosen his pronunciation. I have, moreover, kept the *l* of *il* and *ils*: in the slow and labored utterance of beginners the clipped forms of rapid conversation are disagreeably incongruous. On the other hand, as students are so likely to drawl or distort the “mute *e*,” I have considered this vowel as really silent in all cases where it is not usually audible in actual speech. My treatment of the *u* in *lui* is open to criticism on theoretical grounds, as it is not consistent with the rest of my scheme; I have found, however, by experiment, that it is the only practical method for our school-children: any suggestion of a resemblance between this *u* and *w* is fatal to success. The wise and long-needed reforms in French orthography recently adopted by the French Academy have not yet met with recognition enough to entitle them to consideration in an elementary text-book; in fact, so far as I know, they have never been fully and officially announced: I have therefore been obliged—much against my will—to leave them out of account.

**Suggestions to Teachers.**—As the *Short French Grammar* calls for methods of instruction that are new to many American teachers, the following practical suggestions may not be found superfluous:—

1. Do not try to use the *Grammar*, in a class of beginners, without the accompanying *Lessons and Exercises*, or some equivalent.—The *First* and the *Second Year's Course for Grammar Schools* are suited to very young children, and call for no previous knowledge of technical English grammar; as these grammar school exercises can be used independently of the *Grammar*, they will not be bound with it. The *First Year's Course for High Schools* is intended for beginners who have just entered the high school. The *First Year's Course for Colleges* is adapted both to mature beginners, and to ordinary high school pupils in their second year of French. Some

college classes may profitably complete the two latter courses in one year.

All these schemes are constructed on the basis of three recitations a week. In schools where four or five hours per week are given to French, teachers may pursue either one of the following methods: (1) They may have a grammar lesson at every recitation, thus finishing the course before the end of the year, and leaving several weeks free for translation and oral or written composition; or (2) they may confine the grammar to three hours a week, and devote the other hour or hours to reading and to such oral and written work as is furnished in my *French Composition* and in my *Materials for French Composition* (D. C. Heath & Co.).

2. Follow closely the directions given in the prefaces of the *Lessons and Exercises*, and do not deviate, without good reason, from the schemes of lessons indicated in those courses.—Remember that most pupils can never acquire a good pronunciation unless they form it at the very outset. The use of a phonetic notation, wherever it has been tried (and the experiment has now been made in a great many places), has proved to be a wonderful help to the pupil. Teachers should, therefore, be willing to give themselves the little trouble required to make them thoroughly familiar with the extremely easy system employed in this book; unless they have had exceptional opportunities for learning French, they will probably find their own pronunciation considerably strengthened and improved by the use of this method.

3. Do not be alarmed at the somewhat novel character of the exercises in the *First Year's Course for High Schools*.—English-French and French-English exercises of the traditional kind have here been purposely avoided. As for English-French exercises, the best modern authorities agree in condemning the mechanical translation of English sentences into French by very young pupils who have no acquaintance with the French tongue. Not until the school-boy has gained, through reading and speaking, some insight into the structure of the foreign language, should he attempt to write it; and even then his efforts should be confined, for some time, to the close

imitation of connected French prose that he has carefully studied. With regard to old-fashioned French-English exercises, it is hardly necessary to point out that they are inferior, in every respect, to a well-chosen consecutive French text that interests the pupil, furnishes useful vocabulary, and shows the grammatical principles in natural operation.

4. Use a good reading-book, with high school and college classes, from the very beginning of the first year's course.—Only a part (perhaps two-thirds) of each recitation hour should be given to the grammar work laid out in the *Lessons and Exercises* of these grades; the rest should be devoted to reading. During the first few weeks, all or nearly all translating must, of course, be at sight; this exercise should proceed briskly, the teacher lifting the pupil over the hard places and showing him how to find his way through the rest. When scholars have mastered the verbs, they can easily prepare translation lessons; but sight work should never be entirely neglected. Several excellent reading-books are available: among them are Super's *French Reader*, Joynes's *French Fairy Tales*, Snow and Lebon's *Easy French*, and Laboulaye's *Contes Bleus* (D. C. Heath & Co.).

5. In using the *Grammar* with classes that do not exactly correspond to any of the grades for which courses are provided, adapt the lessons and exercises to the special needs of the scholars.—For instance, third-year high school pupils who are just beginning French can first take the *First Year's Course for High Schools*, covering two or more lessons at a time, and then make use of a large part of the *First Year's Course for Colleges*. High school children, after their second year of French, and college students, after their first year, do not need any regular exercises in grammar: they should, instead, devote some time every week to exercises based on the French texts they are reading, and, later, to free composition work, using the *Grammar* as a book of reference.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

PAGES.

- i. FIRST YEAR'S COURSE FOR HIGH SCHOOLS . . . . Appendix I
- ii. FIRST YEAR'S COURSE FOR COLLEGES . . . . . Appendix II

## GRAMMAR

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| I. PRONUNCIATION AND SPELLING . . . . .    | I-11  |
| Pronunciation . . . . .                    | I-10  |
| Vowels . . . . .                           | I-3   |
| Consonants . . . . .                       | 3-7   |
| Accent . . . . .                           | 7-8   |
| Quantity . . . . .                         | 8-9   |
| Intonation . . . . .                       | 10    |
| Spelling . . . . .                         | 10-11 |
| 2. VERBS . . . . .                         | 12-77 |
| Introduction . . . . .                     | 12-20 |
| Voice, Mood, Tense . . . . .               | 12-18 |
| Person and Number . . . . .                | 19-20 |
| Simple Tenses . . . . .                    | 20-47 |
| General Rules . . . . .                    | 20-23 |
| Regular Verbs . . . . .                    | 23-32 |
| First Conjugation . . . . .                | 23-28 |
| Second Conjugation . . . . .               | 29-30 |
| Third Conjugation . . . . .                | 30-32 |
| Irregular Verbs . . . . .                  | 32-47 |
| List of Irregular Verbs . . . . .          | 33-36 |
| Ten Verbs Conjugated in Full . . . . .     | 37-47 |
| Compound Tenses . . . . .                  | 47-48 |
| Passive Voice . . . . .                    | 48-50 |
| Interrogative and Negative Forms . . . . . | 50-63 |
| Interrogation . . . . .                    | 50-54 |
| Negation . . . . .                         | 54-63 |
| Reflexive Conjugation . . . . .            | 63-66 |

|                                      | PAGES   |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| Impersonal Verbs . . . . .           | 67-69   |
| Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .            | 69-77   |
| 3. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .       | 78-91   |
| Conjunctive Forms . . . . .          | 81-88   |
| Disjunctive Forms . . . . .          | 89-91   |
| 4. POSSESSIVES . . . . .             | 92-96   |
| Possessive Adjectives . . . . .      | 92-94   |
| Possessive Pronouns . . . . .        | 94-96   |
| 5. RELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .       | 97-101  |
| 6. INTERROGATIVES . . . . .          | 102-106 |
| Interrogative Adjectives . . . . .   | 103     |
| Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .     | 103-106 |
| 7. DEMONSTRATIVES . . . . .          | 107-111 |
| Demonstrative Adjectives . . . . .   | 107-108 |
| Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .     | 108-111 |
| 8. ARTICLES . . . . .                | 112-120 |
| Definite Article . . . . .           | 112-118 |
| Form . . . . .                       | 112-113 |
| Use . . . . .                        | 113-118 |
| <i>The</i> . . . . .                 | 113-116 |
| <i>Some</i> and <i>Any</i> . . . . . | 116-118 |
| Indefinite Article . . . . .         | 118-120 |
| 9. ADJECTIVES . . . . .              | 121-138 |
| Form . . . . .                       | 121-125 |
| Agreement . . . . .                  | 125-127 |
| Position . . . . .                   | 127-129 |
| Comparison . . . . .                 | 129-132 |
| Adjectives of Quantity . . . . .     | 132-134 |
| Numerals . . . . .                   | 135-138 |
| 10. NOUNS . . . . .                  | 139-143 |
| Number . . . . .                     | 140-141 |
| Gender . . . . .                     | 142-143 |
| INDEX . . . . .                      | 145-150 |



# A SHORT FRENCH GRAMMAR.



## I. PRONUNCIATION AND SPELLING.

1. A language is written phonetically when the spelling of every word clearly indicates its pronunciation. With English and French this is far from being the case; for almost every letter has several different values, and many of the written letters are not sounded at all. In this book, therefore, the pronunciation of French will be shown by means of a special phonetic notation, which will always be enclosed in parentheses, so that students may not confound it with the usual orthography. For instance, “*quarter* = quart (kar)” means that the French word for *quarter* is spelled *quart* and pronounced *kar*.

### VOWELS.

2. We can distinguish the following French vowels:—

|       | USUAL SPELLING.                               | SOUND.                                |
|-------|---|---------------------------------------|
| (a) : | a ; à   | <i>between a in pat and a in part</i> |
| (â) : | â ; a   | <i>nearly like a in part</i>          |
| (â) : | an ; am ; en ; em                             | <i>nasal (â) ; see § 2, b</i>         |
| (e) : | e   | <i>nearly like u in fur</i>           |
| (é) : | é ; e ; ai                                    | <i>nearly like a in bakery</i>        |
| (è) : | è ; ê ; e ; ai ; ei                           | <i>nearly like e in bed</i>           |
| (ê) : | { in ; im ; yn ; ym<br>ain ; aim ; ein ; en } | <i>nasal (è) ; see § 2, b.</i>        |

| USUAL SPELLING.        | SOUND.                               |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (ë) : eu ; œu          | <i>rounded (è) ; see § 2, a</i>      |
| (ë) : un ; um          | <i>nasal (ë) ; see § 2, b</i>        |
| (i) : i ; î ; y        | <i>nearly like ea in eatable</i>     |
| (ó) : ô ; o ; eau ; au | <i>nearly like o in popery</i>       |
| (ò) : o ; au           | <i>between u in hut and o in hot</i> |
| (ò) : on ; om          | <i>nasal (ò) ; see § 2, b</i>        |
| (ö) : eu ; œu          | <i>rounded (é) ; see § 2, a</i>      |
| (ü) : u ; û            | <i>rounded (i) ; see § 2, a</i>      |
| (u) : ou ; oû ; ou     | <i>nearly like oo in booby</i>       |

All French vowel sounds except (e), whether they are accented or unaccented, are always pronounced sharply and distinctly ; they are neither drawled nor slurred. As a rule, they are shorter than English accented vowels. It is to be noted that most of the English "long vowels" are really diphthongs, while the French long vowels are simple sounds : English *rose*, *rave* are nearly (ròuz), (rèiv) ; but French 'rose,' 'rêve' are (róz), (rèv).

*a.* To pronounce (ü), (ö), (ë), round or pucker the lips, as for whistling, and try to say (i), (é), (è). Rounded (i) = (ü), rounded (é) = (ö), rounded (è) = (ë). Ex. : pu (pü), tu (tü), vu (vü) ; deux (dö), eux (ö), peu (pö) ; bœuf (bëf), œuf (ëf), seul (sël).

*b.* To pronounce (à), (è), (ë), (ò), open the mouth very wide, and say the following English vowels as nasally as possible : *a* as in *mar*, *a* as in *man*, *u* as in *murder*, *aw* as in *marw*. English *a* in *mar* [or French (â)] nasalized = (à), English *a* in *man* [or French (è)] nasalized = (è), English *u* in *murder* [or French (ë)] nasalized = (ë), English *aw* in *marw* [or French (ò)] nasalized = (ò). Ex. : an (à), dans (dà) ; fin (fè), nain (nè) ; un (ë) ; bon (bò), son (sò).

*c.* When (â) and (è) are accented and long, they should be pronounced with the mouth very wide open. In this case (è) has a sound between *e* in *bed* and *a* in *bad*. Ex. : pâte (pât), bête (bèt).

*d.* When (ò) is followed by (r), students can best produce it by trying to pronounce a sound half-way between the *o* in *for* and the *u* in *fur*. Ex. : fort (fòr).

## 3. Examples:—

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (a) : à la gare (a-la-Gar).    | (ö) : un (ë), humble (ëbl).    |
| (â) : âne (ân), classe (klâs). | (i) : fini (fi-ni), île (il).  |
| (â) : l'enfant (lâ-fâ).        | (ó) : sot (só), beau (bó).     |
| (e) : ne, me, le (ne-me-le).   | (ò) : botte (bòt), mort (mòr). |
| (é) : sais (sé), été (é-té).   | (ò) : mon (mò), tombe (tòb).   |
| (è) : est (è), père (pèr).     | (ö) : queue (kô), vœu (vö).    |
| (ê) : sain (sè), vin (vè).     | (ü) : mur (mür), dû (dü).      |
| (ë) : veuve (vëv), peur (për). | (U) : fou (fu), pour (pür).    |

The following notes on the written letters may be of some use:—

*a.* The letter *e* at the end of a word is regularly silent. It is very often silent in other places. Ex. vite (vit), médecin (méd-sè).

*b.* The combination *oi* is pronounced generally (wa), but in some words (wâ); *oin*, however, has the value (wè). Ex.: boire (bwar), boîte (bwat), bois (bwâ), froide (frwâd), loin (lwè), soin (swè).

*c.* In the group *ui* (üi) the (ü) is very short, and the stress is on the (i). Ex.: huit (üit), lui (lüi), puis (püi).

*d.* Before a vowel the combinations *ay*, *oy*, *uy* are regularly pronounced (èy), (way), (üiy). Ex.: payer (pè-yé), croyant (krwa-yâ), appuyer (a-püi-yé).

*e.* After *i* or *y* the group *en* generally has the sound (è) and not (â). Ex.: bien (byè), moyen (mwa-yè).

*f.* Before a vowel, and generally before another *n* or *m*, the groups *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *in*, *im*, *yn*, *ym*, *ain*, *aim*, *ein*, *on*, *om*, *un*, *um* do not represent the nasal sounds (â), (è), (ò), (ë). Ex.: canon (ka-nò), condamner (kò-da-né), ennemi (èn-mi), indemnité (è-da-ni-té), inimitié (i-ni-mi-tyé), synonyme (si-nò-nim), saine (sèn), aime (èm), reine (rèn), chienne (chyèn), tonne (tòn), homme (òm), une (ün), humain (ü-mè).

## CONSONANTS.

4. The French language has the following consonants:—

| USUAL SPELLING.            | SOUND.                    |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| (b) : <b>b</b> ; <b>bb</b> | <i>b</i> in <i>labor</i>  |
| (ch) : <b>ch</b>           | <i>sh</i> in <i>sheep</i> |
| (d) : <b>d</b> ; <b>dd</b> | <i>d</i> in <i>seedy</i>  |

| USUAL SPELLING.   | SOUND.                     |
|---|----------------------------|
| (f) : f ; ff ; ph   | <i>f</i> in <i>feet</i>    |
| (G) : g ; gg ; gu   | <i>gg</i> in <i>foggy</i>  |
| (j) : j ; g before e, i, y <sup>1</sup>                               | <i>si</i> in <i>vision</i> |
| (K) : c ; cc ; qu ; ch  | <i>ck</i> in <i>pocket</i> |
| (l) : l ; ll  | <i>ll</i> in <i>silly</i>  |
| (m) : m ; mm  | <i>mm</i> in <i>summer</i> |
| (n) : n ; nn  | <i>nn</i> in <i>finny</i>  |
| (ñ) : gn  | <i>ni</i> in <i>pinion</i> |
| (p) : p ; pp  | <i>pp</i> in <i>dipper</i> |
| (r) : r ; rr  | see § 4, a                 |
| (s) : c before e, i, y <sup>1</sup> ; ç ; s ; ss ; t <sup>2</sup> ; x | <i>ss</i> in <i>hiss</i>   |
| (t) : t ; tt ; th   | <i>t</i> in <i>pity</i>    |
| (v) : v   | <i>v</i> in <i>never</i>   |
| (w) : o ; ou  | <i>w</i> in <i>woo</i>     |
| (y) : ill ; il ; ll <sup>3</sup> ; l <sup>3</sup> ; y ; i             | <i>y</i> in <i>ye</i>      |
| (z) : s between vowels ; z ; x  | <i>s</i> in <i>easy</i>    |

These consonants should never be mumbled, but should all be articulated as clearly as possible. A consonant sound that is pronounced at the end of a word should be uttered with special force and distinctness. Ex. : patte (pat), ville (vil). A single consonant between two vowels always belongs to the same syllable as the second vowel. Ex. : témérité (té-mé-ri-té). See § 13.

a. The hardest sound for an English-speaking person to acquire is (r). It may be pronounced in either one of two ways : (1) by drawing the tongue into the back of the mouth, and letting the uvula vibrate against it ; (2) by making the point of the tongue vibrate against the upper front teeth. The latter (r) is sometimes used in English by elocutionists and singers. Students should select one of these, and practise it constantly until they can produce it without difficulty. Ex. : reine (rèn), rare (rar), rire (rir), sur (sür), porter (pòr-té), armée (ar-mé), gros (gró), très (trè), drôle (dról), prix (pri).

<sup>1</sup> See § 5, c.

<sup>2</sup> See § 5, d.

<sup>3</sup> After *z*.

*b.* The consonant sounds (w) and (y) are usually more vigorous in French than in English. Ex.: oui (wi), toi (twa), briller (bri-yé), fille (fiy).

*c.* In forming (d), (l), (n), (t), let the point of the tongue touch the backs of the upper front teeth. Ex.: nous te le donnons (nu-tel-dò-nò).

*d.* In pronouncing (ñ), press the point of the tongue against the backs of the lower front teeth. Ex.: Isigny (i-zi-ñi), besogne (be-zòñ).

*e.* When a final (l) or (r) is preceded by (b), (d), (f), (G), (κ), (p), (t), or (v), it should never be allowed to form a separate syllable, but should be spoken very quickly and in a whisper. Ex.: peuple (pèpl), quatre (katr); compare English *people* (pip-l). Final (m) preceded by (s) should be whispered also. Ex.: prisme (prism).<sup>1</sup>

### 5. Examples:—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| ( <b>b</b> ): abbé (a-bé), bu (bü).         | ( <b>n</b> ): ne (ne), bonne (bòn).                |
| ( <b>ch</b> ): chose (chóz), tâche (tâch).  | ( <b>ñ</b> ): agneau (a-ñó), vigne (viñ).          |
| ( <b>d</b> ): dans (dâ), code (kòd).        | ( <b>p</b> ): plus (plü), nappe (nap).             |
| ( <b>f</b> ): fils (fis), phare (far).      | ( <b>r</b> ): riche (rich), horreur (ò-rèr).       |
| ( <b>G</b> ): bague (baG), gué (Gé).        | ( <b>s</b> ): six (sis), cinq (sèk), reçu (re-sü). |
| ( <b>j</b> ): je (je), large (larj).        | ( <b>t</b> ): tête (tèt), thé (té), quitte (kit).  |
| ( <b>K</b> ): sec (sèk), qui (ki).          | ( <b>v</b> ): savant (sa-vâ), vive (viv).          |
| ( <b>l</b> ): long (lò), elle (èl).         | ( <b>w</b> ): droit (drwâ), ouest (wèst).          |
| ( <b>m</b> ): me (me), femme (fam).         | ( <b>y</b> ): tiens (tyè), paille (pây).           |
| (z): zèle (zèl), causer (kó-zé), ruse (rü). |  |

The following remarks have reference to the written letters:—

*a.* The letter *h* is silent in modern French; but at the beginning of certain words, in which it was formerly pronounced, it prevents the elision of a preceding vowel. Such a word is said to begin with “*aspirate h*.” Ex.: la honte (la-òt), *and not* l’honte (lòt). See § 6.

*b.* At the end of a word the letters *d, g, n, s, t, x, z* are generally silent. Ex.: fard (far), rang (rá), mon (mò), cas (kâ), mot (mó), croix (krwa), nez (né).

*c.* The letters *c, g* have the values (s), (j) before *e, i*, and *y*; before other letters they are pronounced (κ), (G). Ex.: cent (sâ), gilet (ji-lè), comme (kòm), gros (Gró).

<sup>1</sup> In the colloquial speech of Paris, *l, r, m*, under the conditions mentioned above, are generally not sounded at all.

*d.* The group *ti*, when followed by a vowel, is pronounced (sy) or (si) in many words, and especially in the endings *-tial*, *-tie*, *-tiel*, *-tieux*, *-tion*. Ex.: *partial* (par-syal), *démocratie* (dé-mò-kra-si), *essentiel* (é-sà-syèl), *factieux* (fak-syö), *nation* (na-syò), *initier* (i-ni-syé), *patience* (pa-syàs).

**6.** Many final consonants that were formerly always pronounced are now heard only when the next word begins with a vowel sound. Even then they are not spoken unless the two words are closely connected. They are silent before “aspirate *h*” [see § 5, *a*]. The *t* of the conjunction ‘*et*,’ *and*, is never pronounced. Examples:—

*we come* = nous venons (nUV-nò), *we go* = nous allons (nU-za-lò),  
 but *I say*: “*Let’s go*” = je dis: “*Allons*” (jdi a-lò);  
*it’s you* = c’est vous (sè-vU), *you live* = vous habitez (vU-za-bi-té),  
 but *you hate* = vous haïssez (vU-a-i-sé);  
*she is* = elle est (è-lè), *she is here* = elle est ici (è-lè-ti-si),  
 but *he and she* = lui et elle (lÜi-é-èl).

(1) In such cases the consonant is carried over to the next word, so that ‘*vous êtes*,’ for instance, is pronounced (vU-zèt); *s* and *x* then have the value of (z), *c* and *g* that of (κ), and *d* that of (t). Examples:—

*the men* = les hommes (lè-zòm), *six years* = six ans (si-zâ);  
*porcupine* = porc-épic (pòr-ké-pik), *high rank* = rang élevé (rà-kél-vé);  
*my feet are cold* = j’ai froid aux pieds (jé-frwâ-tó-pyé).

(2) When the *n* or *m* of final *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *in*, *im*, *yn*, *ym*, *ain*, *aim*, *ein*, *on*, *om*, *un*, or *um* is joined to the next word, the preceding nasal vowel, (*â*), (*è*), (*ò*), or (*ë*), loses much of its nasality; many speakers omit the nasal element altogether, and pronounce the vowel as (*â*), (*è*), (*ò*), or (*ë*). Examples:—

*in Italy* = en Italie (*â*-ni-ta-li) or (*â*-ni-ta-li);  
*another* = un autre (*ë*-nótr) or (*ë*-nótr);  
*my friend* = mon ami (mò-na-mi) or (mò-na-mi).

(3) It will be seen hereafter that many words have a different pronunciation and some have a different spelling, according as the next word begins with a vowel or a consonant sound.

a. By a word beginning with a vowel sound is meant, in general, any word the first letter of which is *a, e, i, o, u, y*, or an *h* that is not “**aspirate**” [see § 5, *a*] : hence ‘oiseau’ (wa-zó) and ‘yeux’ (yö) are treated as words beginning with vowels, although they really begin with the consonants (w) and (y) ; while ‘héros’ (é-ró), with “**aspirate h**,” is treated as a word beginning with a consonant, although its first sound is the vowel (é). There are some exceptions to this rule, but they are not important.

### ACCENT.

7. In English words the accented syllables are very loud and the unaccented ones are very weak. If we should pronounce *universality*, a distant listener would be likely to hear nothing but (yu) and (sal). In French words, on the other hand, and in French phrases or sentences spoken without special emphasis, the syllables are all uttered with nearly the same vigor, except that the last one<sup>1</sup> is apt to be a little stronger than the others. When a Frenchman says ‘universalité,’ (ü), (ni), (vèr), (sa), (li) all seem to be about equal in force, and (té) generally sounds a trifle louder.

8. Both in English and in French the important words of a sentence are made prominent by a special stress, the force of which depends on the emotions of the speaker. In English, however, this extra stress regularly falls on an accented syllable : no matter how strongly we emphasize the word *miserable*, we always pronounce it *miserable*, and never *miserable*. In French, on the contrary, the emphasis usually falls on one of the less accented vowels, oftenest on that of the root-syllable : ‘misérable’ (mi-zé-rabl’) in

---

<sup>1</sup> By the “last syllable” is always meant, in this book, the last syllable that is sounded in a phrase or an isolated word. For instance, the word ‘calorifère’ may be divided, in writing, into these parts — *ca-lo-ri-fè-re* ; but it is pronounced (ka-lò-ri-fèr), and the last syllable is (fèr).

excited speech becomes 'misérable' (mi'-zé-rabl). So 'absolument' (ap-sò-lü-mâ'), 'impossible' (è-pò-sibl'), 'incroyable' (è-krwa-yabl') are changed to (ap-sò-lü-mâ'), (è-pò-sibl), (è-krwa'-yabl); and, similarly, the sentences 'c'est très joli' (sè-trè-jò-li'),<sup>1</sup> 'c'est trop fort' (sè-trò-fòr')<sup>2</sup> become (sè-trè'-jò-li), (sè-trò'-fòr).

### QUANTITY.

9. To an English-speaking person nearly all French vowels sound very short. The distinctions of length are much more delicate in French than in English; in fact, it may be said that the whole range of French quantity is included between the *a* of *battery* and the *a* of *bad*, as these words are pronounced in the sentence *the battery is bad*.

Since this book is intended for beginners, we shall recognize only two degrees of quantity, *long* and *short*. Of course there are many differences within each of these classes; we may say, roughly, that the long vowels vary in length between the *a* in *bad* and the *a* in *bat*, and that short vowels range between the *a* in *bat* and the *a* in *battery*.

Hereafter, in the phonetic notation, long vowels will be written double. Ex.: *courir* (ku-riir).

10. For practical purposes, all French vowels may be regarded as short, *unless they stand in the last syllable*<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *It's very pretty.*

<sup>2</sup> *It's too bad.*

<sup>3</sup> By the "last syllable" is meant the last, not merely of the word, but of the whole phrase in which the syllable occurs. See § 7, foot-note. Hence the quantity of a vowel in the final syllable of a word often depends on the position of that word in the sentence: in the expression 'troubler la fête' (tru-blé-la-fèèt) the (è) of 'fête' is long, but in 'la fête de Dieu' (la-fèt-de-dyö) it is short.



and are followed by a consonant sound; (e) and (é) are never so situated, and are therefore always short. Ex.: ananas (a-na-nâ), apprentissage (a-prâ-ti-saaj), calorifère (ka-lò-ri-fèèr), relever (rel-vé).

*In the position just mentioned:—*

(â), (ó), (ö), (â), (è), (ë), (ò) are regularly long.<sup>1</sup> Ex.: basse (bââs), pâte (pâât); côte (κóót), pauvre (póóvr); meule (möööl), neutre (nööötr); ancre (ââkr), semble (sââbl); feinte (fèèt), plainte (plèèt); humble (èèbl); fonte (fòòt), rompre (ròòpr).

(a), (è), (ë), (i), (ò), (ü), (u) are long in some words and short in others:—

(1) If the following consonant is (j), (v), (y), (z), or final (r),<sup>2</sup> they are long. Ex.: cage (kaaj), cortège (kòr-tèèj); cave (kaav), neuve (nëëv); abeille (a-bèèy), travail (tra-vaay); douze (duuz), ruse (rütüz); dire (diir), mort (mòòr).

(2) If the following consonant is not (j), (v), (y), (z), nor (r), their quantity must be learned by practice. Ex.: la bague (la-bag), la vague (la-vaag); boîte (bwaat), boîte (bwaat); mettre (mèètr), maître (mèètr); renne (rèn), reine (rèèn); nièce (nyès), arène (a-rèèn); certaine (sèr-tèn), aime (èèm). See § 12, b.

a. It follows from the rules given above that *all final and all unaccented vowels are short*. Ex.: rat (ra), voit (vwa); croît (krwâ), pas (pâ); assez (a-sé), bonté (bò-té); après (a-prè), bonnet (bò-nè); poli (pò-li), vie (vi); abricot (a-bri-κó), bateau (ba-tó); joue (ju), loup (lu); besogneux (be-zò-nö), vendu (vá-dü); comment (kò-mâ), jardin (jar-dè), chacun (cha-kè), bâton (bâ-tò).

<sup>1</sup> In the case of (â) there are a few exceptions, but only after (w): 'droite' = (drwât), 'étroite' = (é-trwât), 'froide' = (frwâd), 'froisse' = (frwâs), 'paroisse' = (pa-rwâs).

<sup>2</sup> Before (r) followed by another consonant sound, the vowel is short; 'arc' = (ark), 'berge' = (bèrj), 'corne' = (κòrn).

## INTONATION.

11. The proper inflections of the voice must be acquired by imitation. They should be carefully studied, as they form an important element in pronunciation. In general it may be said that the differences in pitch are greater in French than in American English, and that the changes are more abrupt: hence spoken French sometimes sounds to an American a little like singing.

## SPELLING.

12. The French alphabet has the same letters as the English; but *k* and *w* occur only in words borrowed from other languages. A *c* with a *cedilla* [ç] is often used to represent the sound (s) before *a*, *o*, or *u*, as in 'reçu' (re-sü). Two dots over a vowel letter generally show that the vowel is to be pronounced separately, — 'oui' is (wi) and 'ouï' is (u-i), 'aiguiser' is (è-güi-zé) and 'ambiguïté' is (â-bi-gü-i-té); but the combination *-guë* is sounded (gü), as in 'aiguë' (è-gü). Three marks, called "accents," are frequently written over French vowel letters: the *acute accent* [´] as in 'été,' the *grave accent* [ ` ] as in 'là,' and the *circumflex accent* [ ^ ] as in 'fûmes'; these accents are a regular feature of French spelling, and their use must be learned as carefully as any other part of the orthography.

*a.* The accents are often helpful in determining the pronunciation of vowels: *é* regularly has the sound (é);<sup>1</sup> *è* and *ê* have the value (è); and *â*, *ô* are nearly always pronounced (â), (ó).<sup>2</sup> Ex.: vérité (vé-ri-té); père (pèèr), tête (tèèt); âne (âân), ôter (ó-té).

<sup>1</sup> The most important exceptions are the inverted verbal forms 'parlé-je,' 'eussé-je,' etc.

<sup>2</sup> In 'hôpital,' 'hôtel,' 'rôti' the *ô* is pronounced (ò); in the verbal endings *-âmes*, *-âtes* the *â* is usually sounded (a).

*b.* The circumflex accent usually indicates that a vowel sound is long, provided the vowel in question stands in a final syllable and is followed by a consonant sound.<sup>1</sup> Ex.: patte (pat), pâte (pâât); faite (fêt), faîte (fèèt); bette (bèt), bête (bèèt); jeune (jën), jeûne (jööñ); crime (krim), abîme (a-biim); cotte (kòt), côte (cóót); croupe (krup), croûte (krut); brume (brüm), brûle (brüül).

**13.** In the division of written words into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is joined to the second vowel, as in *gé-né-reu-se-ment*; but *x* goes with the first, as in *ex-a-men*. The groups *bl, br, ch, cl, cr, dr, gn, fl, fr, gl, gr, ph, pl, pr, th, tr, vr*<sup>2</sup> belong to the following vowel: *com-bler, ar-bre, a-chat, bâ-cler, vain-cre, pou-dre, a-gneau, sif-fler, of-frir, ré-gler, ai-gre, né-nu-phar, sou-ple, â-pre, a-thée, vi-tre, ou-vrir*. Other groups of two consonant letters are generally divided in the middle: *ab-bes-se, ac-cent, ad-mi-rer, al-ler, bon-heur, es-pé-ran-ce, sug-gé-rer*.

**14.** Capitals are used, as in English, at the beginning of a sentence and in proper names. In the following cases small letters should be employed: (1) in adjectives derived from proper nouns; (2) generally in words that indicate rank or office; (3) in the names of the days and months; (4) in the pronoun 'je,' meaning *I*. Ex.: *George is in France* = Georges est en France; *a French book* = un livre français;<sup>3</sup> *Queen Victoria* = la reine Victoria; *I shall come Tuesday* = je viendrai mardi.

**15.** See § 3, *a, b, c, d, e, f* and § 5, *a, b, c, d*.

<sup>1</sup> In 'êtes' and in the verbal endings *-âmes, -âtes, -îmes, -îtes, -ûmes, -ûtes* the vowel is short: *ê* and *û* are sometimes short in a few other words.

<sup>2</sup> Of these groups, *ch, gn, ph, th* denote simple sounds, and in all the others the second element is *l* or *r*.

<sup>3</sup> *The Frenchman* is 'le Français'; *French*, meaning *the French language*, is 'le français.'

## 2. VERBS.

## Voice, Mood, Tense.

**16.** In French, as in English, a verb may be either *active* or *passive*. English verbs form their passive by means of the auxiliary *to be*; in French the auxiliary is 'être' (èètr), which means *to be*. Ex.: active, *he finds* = il trouve (il-truuv); passive, *he is found* = il est trouvé (i-lè-tru-vé).<sup>1</sup>

*a.* The French are not fond of the passive, and avoid it in many cases where it would naturally be used in English. Ex.: *I have been found* = *somebody has found me* = on m'a trouvé. For the use of 'on' see § 64 and § 64, *a*.

*b.* An English passive infinitive dependent on the verb *to let*, 'laisser,' or the verb *to cause*, 'faire,' is translated by the active infinitive in French. Ex.: *he lets himself be deceived* = il se laisse tromper; *I cause it to be proclaimed* = je le fais proclamer.

**17.** In French, as in English, an infinitive may be either *present* or *perfect*. Ex.: present, *to find* = trouver (tru-vé); perfect, *to have found* = avoir trouvé (a-vwar-tru-vé). The part of a verb that is given in dictionaries is the present active infinitive.

*a.* Sometimes, in English, *to* is omitted before an infinitive; but it must be remembered that a verb immediately dependent on another verb, whether *to* is expressed or not, is in the infinitive, and must be translated by that mood in French. Ex.: *he must go* = il doit partir; *you can walk* = vous pouvez marcher; *we see them come* = nous les voyons venir.

*b.* The proper translation of *to* before an infinitive must be learned by observation. It differs according to the word on which the infini-

---

<sup>1</sup> In colloquial English, *to get* is often used, instead of *to be*, as auxiliary of the passive: *it got broken* = *it was broken* = il fut cassé.

tive depends, and according to the idea conveyed by *to*: sometimes the *to* is rendered by 'de,' by 'à,' or by 'pour,' and sometimes it is not translated at all. *To* meaning *in order to* is nearly always 'pour.' Ex.: *he promises to do it* = il promet de le faire; *ready to go* = prêt à partir; *I work to earn my living* = je travaille pour gagner ma vie; *she has come to see me* = elle est venue me voir.

*c.* *To come and do something and to go and do anything* are expressed by 'venir' and 'aller' followed by a dependent infinitive. Ex.: *he came and asked me to go and get a book* = *he came to ask me to go to get a book* = il est venu me prier d'aller chercher un livre.

**18.** In French, as in English, a participle may be *present*, *past*, or *perfect*.<sup>1</sup> Ex.: present, *finding* = *trouvant* (tru-vâ); past, *found* = *trouvé* (tru-vé); perfect, *having found* = *ayant trouvé* (è-yâ-tru-vé). The present active participle always ends in *-ant* (â).

*a.* The forms given above are those of the masculine singular; they are used when the participle agrees with a word that is singular and masculine, and also in cases where the participle is invariable. The feminine form of participles is found by adding silent *e* to the masculine; if the masculine ends in a silent consonant, this consonant is pronounced in the feminine. The plural of each gender is made by adding a silent *s*<sup>2</sup> to the singular; but if the masculine singular ends in *s*, no *s* is added for the masculine plural. Ex.: *sing. fait* (fè) *faite* (fèt), *plur. faits* (fè) *faites* (fèt); *sing. pris* (pri) *prise* (priiz), *plur. pris* (pri) *prises* (priiz).<sup>3</sup>

*b.* Real present participles are invariable in French: *she went away, singing* = *elle s'éloigna en chantant*. But adjectives with participial form agree, like other adjectives, in gender and number with the words they modify: *a singing voice* = *une voix chantante*. See §§ 117-119.

*c.* The past participle of a passive verb, or of an intransitive verb whose auxiliary is 'être,' *to be*, must agree in gender and number with

<sup>1</sup> In a few English grammars the *present* participle is called "imperfect," the *past* participle is called "perfect," and the *perfect* participle is called "compound." The English verbal form in *-ing*, in such constructions as *after doing this*, is sometimes called an infinitive; but in most English grammars and in this book it is, for the sake of convenience, classed as a *present participle*.

<sup>2</sup> See § 6 and § 6, (1).

<sup>3</sup> For a few irregular forms see § 32.

the subject of the verb. See §§ 117-119. Ex.: *he is found* = *il est trouvé*, *she is found* = *elle est trouvée*; *he is come* = *il est venu*, *they are come* = *ils sont venus*. The past participle of an intransitive verb whose auxiliary is 'avoir,' *to have*, is invariable: *we have slept* = *nous avons dormi*; *they had been* = *ils avaient été*.

d. The past participle of an active, transitive verb does not agree with the subject, but it sometimes does agree with the *direct object*: (1) if the direct object precedes the verb, the past participle agrees with it in gender and number; (2) if the direct object follows the verb, the past participle is invariable. Ex.: *what books has he given me* = *quels livres m'a-t-il donnés?* *he has given you the books that I have found* = *il vous a donné les livres que j'ai trouvés* [see § 86]; *he has cut his hand* = *il s'est coupé la main*; *they have cut themselves* = *ils se sont coupés*. There are two apparent exceptions to this rule: (A) the past participle of 'faire' [see § 18, *i*] is invariable before a dependent infinitive; (B) a past participle never changes its form to agree with the pronoun 'en' [see § 65]. Ex.: *he has had them come* = *il les a fait venir*; *I looked for them and found some* = *je les ai cherchés et j'en ai trouvé*.

e. After a preposition the English present participle must be translated by the French infinitive: *without finding* = *sans trouver*; *after having found* = *après avoir trouvé*. But when the preposition is *by* or *through*, rendered in French by 'en,' the present participle is used in French as in English: *by finding* = *en trouvant*.

f. When, in English, *while* is used or can be understood before the present participle, the phrase is translated by 'en' with the present participle in French: [*while*] *saying this, he looks at me* = *en disant cela il me regarde*.

g. An English present participle is often equivalent to a relative clause: *the laughing man* = *the man who laughs* = *l'homme qui rit*; *it's a child crying* = *it's a child that is crying* = *c'est un enfant qui pleure*.

h. An English present participle preceded by the verb *to see*, 'voir,' or *to hear*, 'entendre,' is generally translated by the present active infinitive in French: *I see them coming* = *je les vois venir*; *we hear him speaking* = *nous l'entendons parler*.

i. An English past participle preceded by a verb meaning *to hear*, 'entendre,' *to see*, 'voir,' or *to have* [signifying *to cause*], 'faire,' is translated by the present active infinitive in French: *I have heard it*

*said* = je l'ai entendu **dire** ; *we have seen them eaten* = nous les avons vu **manger** ; *she has it made* = elle le fait **faire** ; *I had it given to him* = je le lui fis **donner**.

19. Aside from the infinitive and participle, French verbs have four moods: the *indicative*, the *imperative*, the *conditional*, and the *subjunctive*.

a. The indicative and the imperative are used as in English: *he comes here* = il vient ici, *she pays attention* = elle fait attention ; *come here* = viens ici ! *pay attention* = faites attention !

b. The French conditional is used to translate the English forms with *should* or *would* in the following two cases: (1) in the *conclusion* of a conditional sentence; (2) in a clause in indirect discourse the verb of which, in direct discourse, would have been *future*. — Ex. (1): *if I had it, I should give it to you* = si je l'avais, je vous le **donnerais** ; *if he came, he would find me* = s'il venait, il me **trouverait** ; *I should like to go there* [that is, *if I could*] = je **voudrais** y aller. — Ex. (2): *they had told him that she would come* [that is, *they had said to him: "She will come"*] = on lui avait dit qu'elle **viendrait**.

c. The French subjunctive is not like any English mood. In cases where the French language requires the subjunctive, the English has generally the indicative, but sometimes the infinitive, and sometimes the compound forms with *should*, *would*, *might*, or *may*. The French subjunctive is found occasionally in principal, but much oftener in subordinate clauses. Although the uses of this mood must be learned by practice, the main principles governing its occurrence will be briefly stated here: — IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES: A. The present subjunctive is employed independently to express a wish or command: *so be it* = ainsi **soit-il** ; *let them come* = qu'ils **viennent**. — B. The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used instead of the perfect conditional: *he would have saved her* = il l'**eût sauvée**, for il l'aurait sauvée. — IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES the subjunctive is *present* or *present perfect* if the verb of the main clause is present, present perfect, future, or future perfect; the subjunctive is *past* or *past perfect* if the verb of the main clause is past, past perfect, or in the conditional. — A. The subjunctive is generally employed in a clause dependent (1) on a word or phrase denoting causation, concession, desire, fear, joy, prevention, sorrow, surprise, or uncertainty, followed by the conjunction 'que' (que),

*that: I want you to do it* = je veux que vous le **fassiez**, *we feared he was ill* = nous craignons qu'il ne **fût** malade, *you don't believe she is coming* = vous ne croyez pas qu'elle **vienne**;<sup>1</sup> (2) on a superlative or a word meaning *first, last, only, no, nothing, or nobody*: *it's the best we can do* = c'est le mieux que nous **puissions** faire, *he was the only one that had stayed* = il était le seul qui **fût** resté; (3) on an impersonal verb: <sup>2</sup> *it is necessary for them to write* = il faut qu'ils **écrivent**, *it is right for you to be punished* = il est juste que vous **soyez** puni. — B. The subjunctive is used after conjunctions meaning *although, before, for fear, provided, so that* [indicating purpose], *supposing, unless, until, without*, and generally in dependent clauses expressing concession, purpose, or restriction: *although you speak very loud, I do not hear you* = quoique vous **parliez** très fort, je ne vous entends pas; *no matter who you are, come in* = qui que vous **soyez**, entrez. — C. The past perfect subjunctive, with or without 'si,' *if*,<sup>3</sup> is occasionally used, instead of the indicative with 'si,' in a condition contrary to fact: *if I had seen him* = si je l'**eusse vu**, *for si je l'avais vu*; *had he wished to do so* = **eût-il voulu** le faire, *for s'il avait voulu le faire*.

**20.** In English we distinguish in the indicative three simple tenses: the *present*, the *past*, and the *future*. Ex.: *I am* = je suis (je-süi); *I was* = j'étais (jé-tè) or je fus (je-fü); *I shall be* = je serai (jes-ré). The French indicative has a present, a future, and *two* past tenses, which we shall call the *descriptive past* and the *narrative past*. The subjunctive has only two simple tenses: a present and a past. The imperative and the conditional have neither past nor future.

*a.* In English, simple present and past time are expressed in several ways: (1) by the simple present and past tenses; (2) by the present participle combined with the auxiliary *to be*; (3) by the infinitive combined with the auxiliary *to do*. In French only the first of these

<sup>1</sup> But *I believe she is coming* = je crois qu'elle viendra. Verbs of thinking and believing are followed by the subjunctive when used negatively or interrogatively, by the indicative when used affirmatively.

<sup>2</sup> This rule does not apply to phrases meaning *it is true* or *it is because*. Ex.: *it is because you do not know him* = c'est que vous ne le connaissez pas.

<sup>3</sup> The *i* of 'si' is elided before 'il,' *he* or *it*, and 'ils,' *they*, but not before any other word.



methods is used. Hence *I speak, I am speaking, and I do speak* are all translated by 'je parle'; *I spoke, I was speaking, I did speak, and also I used to speak* all correspond to 'je parlais.'

*b.* The difference between the descriptive and the narrative past is to a certain extent implied in their names. Use the descriptive past: (1) in clauses of a descriptive or explanatory nature where the past would be used in English, as *it was eight o'clock, the wind was blowing, it was very cold* = il **était** huit heures, le vent **soufflait**, il **faisait** très froid, or *he gave me the ring that he wore* = il me donna la bague qu'il **portait**; (2) to tell what was going on or how things were when something happened, as in *I was speaking when he came in* = je **parlais** lorsqu'il entra; (3) to represent a past state or action as habitual, repeated, or protracted, as in *I spoke to him every day* = je lui **parlais** tous les jours; (4) in conditional clauses where the past indicative or subjunctive is or might be used in English, as *if he were here, I should see him* = s'il **était** ici, je le verrais, or *if he should speak* [that is, *if he spoke*] *to me, I should answer him* = s'il me **parlait**, je lui répondrais. In all other cases use the narrative past. See, however, § 21, *b.*<sup>1</sup>

*c.* In subordinate clauses relating to the future and introduced by a conjunction of time, we generally use the present tense in English, but the future tense must be employed in French. Ex.: *when he comes here, he will see me* = quand il **viendra** ici, il me verra.

*d.* For the use of tenses in the subjunctive see § 19, *c.* In colloquial French the subjunctive past is generally avoided, the present being used in its stead; the forms belonging to the first conjugation [see §§ 28, 29] are particularly unpopular.

**21.** In French, as in English, we find in the indicative three compound tenses: the *present perfect*, the *past perfect*, and the *future perfect*.<sup>2</sup> Ex.: *I have been* = j'ai été (jé-é-té); *I had been* = j'avais été (ja-vè-zé-té); *I shall have been* = j'aurai été (jò-ré-é-té). The subjunctive has a present perfect and a past perfect; the conditional has a

<sup>1</sup> Usually the *descriptive past* is called the "imperfect," and the *narrative past* is called the "past definite" or the "preterit."

<sup>2</sup> In French grammars the *present perfect* is generally called "past indefinite" or "perfect," the *past perfect* is nearly always called "pluperfect," and the *future perfect* is called "future anterior."

perfect; the imperative has no compound tense. For the infinitive and the participle see §§ 17, 18.

Most French verbs form their compound tenses by combining their past participle with the auxiliary 'avoir' (a-vwaar), *to have*; but all reflexive verbs and many intransitive verbs use, instead of 'avoir,' the auxiliary 'être' (èètr), *to be*. Ex.: *she has cut it* = elle l'a coupé (èl-la-ku-pé); *she has cut herself* = elle s'est coupée (èl-sè-ku-pé); *she has cut her finger* = *she has cut herself the finger* = elle s'est coupé le doigt (èl-sè-ku-pél-dwa); *she has stayed* = elle est restée (è-lè-rès-té).

a. The proper auxiliary to be used with *intransitive* verbs must be learned, to a certain extent, by practice. The commonest intransitive verbs conjugated with 'être' are: aller, arriver, descendre, entrer, monter, mourir, naître, partir, rentrer, rester, retourner, revenir, sortir, tomber, venir. 'Passer' and some other verbs are conjugated sometimes with 'être' and sometimes with 'avoir.' See § 18, c, and § 34, (2).

b. In colloquial French the narrative past is always replaced by the present perfect: *I saw him last year* = je l'ai vu l'an dernier. This construction is frequently used also in the literary style. The French present perfect corresponds, therefore, both to the English present perfect and to the English past: 'j'ai donné' may mean either *I have given* or *I gave*.

c. The usual form of the past perfect is made by combining the *descriptive* past of the auxiliary with the past participle of the main verb: *I had been* = j'avais été; *I had gone* = j'étais allé. A second form of the past perfect is constructed from the *narrative* past of the auxiliary and the past participle of the verb; this combination is used after expressions meaning *as soon as*: *as soon as I had spoken* = aussitôt que j'eus parlé.<sup>1</sup>

d. When an action is represented as having taken place and as still continuing in the present or in the past, the English uses the present perfect or past perfect tense, the French the simple present or descriptive past: *I have been here for two years* = je suis ici depuis deux ans.

---

<sup>1</sup> This second form of the past perfect is often called the "past anterior."

### Person and Number.

**22.** French verbs have special endings for the different persons, both in the singular and in the plural; and every French finite verb must agree in person and number with its subject, whether that subject be expressed or understood. Ex.: *I give* = je donne (je-dòn), *we give* = nous donnons (nu-dò-nò), *you give* = vous donnez (vu-dò-né), *they give* = ils donnent (il-dòn); *let's give* = donnons (dò-nò), *give* = donnez (dò-né).

a. Let us consider the word *cut*, in the sentence *now we cut it*. *Cut*, in itself, might be the infinitive, the past participle, the imperative, any part of the indicative past, and any form of the indicative present except the third person singular; but the construction of the sentence makes it clear that *cut* is here in the indicative active, the adverb *now* tells us that it is present, and the pronoun *we* shows us that it is in the first person plural: so we must select, among the forms of the French verb, the one that belongs to the first person plural of the present indicative active — ‘coupons.’

b. A verb whose subject is a noun is in the third person: *the child fell* = l'enfant tomba. A verb with two subjects which are or might be connected by *and* is in the plural: *the doctor and his brother went away* = le médecin et son frère partirent. When there are two or more subjects, one of which is of the first person, the verb is in the first person plural: *my sister and I are here* = ma sœur et moi, nous sommes ici [see § 74, (1)]. If there are two or more subjects, all belonging to the second and third persons, the verb is in the second person plural: *you and they understand me* = vous et eux, vous me comprenez [see § 74, (1)].

**23.** French ‘vous’ (vu), like its English equivalent, *you*, may be either singular or plural in sense, but its verb is always plural; a past participle or an adjective agreeing with it is singular or plural according to the number of persons represented by ‘vous.’ Ex.: *you have come, my friend* = vous êtes venu, mon ami (vu-zèt-vnü mò-na-mi);

*you have come, my friends* = vous êtes venus, mes amis (vu-zèt-vnü mè-za-mi).

The French language has, however, another form of address in the singular: when *you* stands for the name of a near relative, an intimate friend, a small child, an animal, or an inanimate object, it is usually translated by 'tu' (tü), and the verb is singular. The word 'tu' corresponds also to English *thou*, used in poetry and poetic prose. The plural of 'tu' is 'vous.' Ex.: *where are you, my child* = où es-tu, mon enfant (wè-tü mò-nâ-fâ)? *where are you, my children* = où êtes vous, mes enfants (wèt-vu mè-zâ-fâ)?

**24.** The French imperative has three forms: a second person singular, and a first and a second person plural. Ex.: *give* = donne (dòn), *subject understood*, tu; *let's give* = donnons (dò-nò), *subject understood*, nous; *give* = donnez (dò-né), *subject understood*, vous.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

### General Rules.

**25.** Below is given the pronunciation of the personal endings of French verbs. Final consonants and the terminations *e*, *es*, and *ent* are silent; see, however, § 6. The endings of each tense are arranged in the following order: first person singular, second person singular, third person singular, first person plural, second person plural, third person plural.

#### Future:

*ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont* = (é), (a), (a), (ò), (é), (ò)

#### Conditional:

*ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient* = (è), (è), (è), (yò),<sup>1</sup> (yé),<sup>1</sup> (è)

<sup>1</sup> The pronunciation really varies between (yò), (yé) and (i-ò), (i-é).

**Narrative Past :**

*ai, as, a, âmes, âtes, èrent* = (é), (a), (a), (am), (at), (èèr)  
*is, is, it, îmes, îtes, irent* = (i), (i), (i), (im), (it), (iir)  
*us, us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, urent* = (ü), (ü), (ü), (üm), (üt), (üür)

**Subjunctive Past :**

*asse, asses, ât, assions, assiez, assent* = (as), (as), (a), (asyò), (asyé), (as)  
*isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent* = (is), (is), (i), (isyò), (isyé), (is)  
*usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent* = (üs), (üs), (ü), (üsyò), (üsyé), (üs)

The endings of the descriptive past are the same as those of the conditional. In the present indicative, imperative, and subjunctive most of the terminations are silent [see p. 20, § 25]; the others, *ons, ez, ions, iez*, coincide with those of the future and conditional.

**26.** The following five forms of the active verb are called the *principal parts*: (i.) the present infinitive, (ii.) the present participle, (iii.) the past participle, (iv.) the first person singular of the present indicative, (v.) the first person singular of the narrative past. Ex.: i. donner (dò-né), ii. donnant (dò-nâ), iii. donné (dò-né), iv. je donne (je-dòn), v. je donnai (je-dò-né). From these forms we can construct the whole conjugation of all regular and of most irregular verbs. The *infinitive* gives us (1) the future and (2) the conditional; the *present participle* gives us (1) the plural of the present indicative, (2) the plural of the imperative, (3) the descriptive past, (4) the present subjunctive; the *past participle* is used only in the formation of compound tenses [see § 34]; the *first person singular of the present indicative* gives us (1) the rest of the present indicative singular and (2) the imperative singular; the *first person singular of the narrative past* gives us (1) the rest of the narrative past and (2) the past subjunctive. The method of formation is stated below :—

i. Add to the infinitive,<sup>1</sup> dropping final *e* if there is one,

(1) for the future: **ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont.** Ex.: *infin.* finir, *fut.* finirai, finiras, finira, finirons, finirez, finiront.

(2) for the conditional: **ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient.** Ex.: *infin.* vendre, *cond.* vendrais, vendrais, vendrait, vendrions, vendriez, vendraient.

ii. Change the ending *ant* of the present participle,

(1) for the present indicative plural, to: **ons, ez, ent.** Ex.: *pres. part.* finissant, *pres. ind. pl.* finissons, finissez, finissent.

(2) for the imperative plural, to: **ons, ez.** Ex.: *pres. part.* vendant, *imper. pl.* vendons, vendez.

(3) for the descriptive past, to: **ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient.** Ex.: *pres. part.* croyant, *descr. past* croyais, croyais, croyait, croyions, etc.

(4) for the present subjunctive, to: **e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.** Ex.: *pres. part.* sachant, *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, etc.

iii. For compound tenses, formed with the aid of the past participle, see § 34.

iv. The first person singular of the present indicative always ends in *e*, *x*, or *s*.<sup>2</sup>

(1) The other two persons are formed by changing this

**e** to: **es, e.** Ex.: *first pers.* parle, *second* parles, *third* parle.

**x** to: **x, t.** Ex.: *first pers.* veux, *second* veux, *third* veut.

**s** to: **s, t.** Ex.: *first pers.* sais, *second* sais, *third* sait.

**But if the *s* is preceded by *c*, *d*, or *t*, no *t* is added in the third person:** vaincs, vaincs, vainc; vends, vends, vend; mets, mets, met.

(2) The one form of the imperative singular is exactly like the first person singular of the present indicative. Ex.: *I speak, I choose, I break* = je parle, je choisis, je romps; *speak, choose, break* = parle, choisis, romps. If the pronoun or adverb 'en' or 'y' [see §§ 65, 66] immediately follows, an imperative regularly ending in a vowel adds a final *s*, which is pronounced (*z*). Ex.: donne, va; donnes-en, vas-y.

v. The first person singular of the narrative past always ends in *ai*, *is*, or *us*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The infinitive ending *-er* (*é*) is then sounded (*r*) or (*er*): donnerai = (dôn-ré).

<sup>2</sup> Except in the verb 'avoir,' *to have*.

<sup>3</sup> Except in 'tenir' and 'venir' and their compounds: see § 33, (8) and (9).

(1) The rest of the narrative past is formed by changing this

**ai** to: **as, a, âmes, âtes, èrent.** Ex.: allai, allas, alla, allâmes, *etc.*  
**is** to: **is, it, îmes, îtes, irent.** Ex.: pris, pris, prit, primes, *etc.*  
**us** to: **us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, urent.** Ex.: dus, dus, dut, dûmes, *etc.*

(2) The past subjunctive is formed by changing the same

**ai** to: **asse, asses, ât, assions, assiez, assent.** Ex.: allasse, *etc.*  
**is** to: **isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent.** Ex.: prisse, *etc.*  
**us** to: **usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent.** Ex.: dusse, *etc.*

**27.** Some of the irregular verbs do not conform to all of these rules: their peculiarities will be noted in § 32 and § 33. A few irregularities in some *regular* verbs of the first conjugation will be mentioned in § 29, *a, b, c, d.*

### Regular Verbs.

**28.** Regular verbs are divided into three conjugations, according to the ending of the present active infinitive: verbs in *-er* belong to the first, those in *-ir* to the second, and those in *-re* to the third conjugation.<sup>1</sup> If the infinitive of a regular verb is known, the other principal parts can be constructed from it:—

**First Conj.:** drop final **er**, and add **ant, é, e, ai.**

**Second Conj.:** drop final **ir**, and add **issant, i, is, is.**

**Third Conj.:** drop final **re**, and add **ant, u, s, is.**

Ex.: *donner*, donnant, donné, je donne, je donnai; *grandir*, grandissant, grandi, je grandis, je grandis; *rompre*, rompant, rompu, je romps, je rompis.

**29.** The verb 'donner,' *to give*, will serve as a model of the first conjugation:—

*To give* = **donner** (dò-né), *giving* = **donnant** (dò-ná), *given* = **donné** (dò-né).

---

<sup>1</sup> Many grammarians make of a few verbs in *-oir* another regular conjugation, which they call the *third*; the conjugation in *-re* they call the *fourth*. In this book the verbs in *-oir* are all classed as *irregular*.

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>I am giving or I give</i>                    | <b>je donne</b> (je-dòn)       |
| <i>you are giving or you give</i>               | <b>tu donnes</b> (tü-dòn)      |
| <i>he is giving or he gives</i>                 | <b>il donne</b> (il-dòn)       |
| <i>we are giving or we give</i>                 | <b>nous donnons</b> (nU-dò-nò) |
| <i>you are giving or you give</i>               | <b>vous donnez</b> (vU-dò-né)  |
| <i>they<sup>1</sup> are giving or they give</i> | <b>ils donnent</b> (il-dòn)    |

## DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <i>I was giving or I used to give<sup>2</sup></i>        | <b>je donnais</b> (je-dò-nè)      |
| <i>you were giving or you used to give</i>               | <b>tu donnais</b> (tü-dò-nè)      |
| <i>she was giving or she used to give</i>                | <b>elle donnait</b> (èl-dò-nè)    |
| <i>we were giving or we used to give</i>                 | <b>nous donnions</b> (nU-dò-nyò)  |
| <i>you were giving or you used to give</i>               | <b>vous donniez</b> (vU-dò-nyé)   |
| <i>they<sup>1</sup> were giving or they used to give</i> | <b>elles donnaient</b> (èl-dò-nè) |

## NARRATIVE PAST.

|                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>I gave</i>    | <b>je donnai</b> (je-dò-né)      |
| <i>you gave</i>  | <b>tu donnas</b> (tü-dò-na)      |
| <i>he gave</i>   | <b>il donna</b> (il-dò-na)       |
| <i>we gave</i>   | <b>nous donnâmes</b> (nU-dò-nam) |
| <i>you gave</i>  | <b>vous donnâtes</b> (vU-dò-nat) |
| <i>they gave</i> | <b>ils donnèrent</b> (il-dò-nèr) |

## FUTURE.

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>I shall give<sup>3</sup></i> | <b>je donnerai</b> (je-dòn-ré)     |
| <i>you will give</i>            | <b>tu donneras</b> (tü-dòn-ra)     |
| <i>she will give</i>            | <b>elle donnera</b> (èl-dòn-ra)    |
| <i>we shall give</i>            | <b>nous donnerons</b> (nU-dòn-rò)  |
| <i>you will give</i>            | <b>vous donnerez</b> (vU-dòn-ré)   |
| <i>they will give</i>           | <b>elles donneront</b> (èl-dòn-rò) |

<sup>1</sup> The French language has two words for *they*: 'ils' is the plural of 'il,' *he*; 'elles' is the plural of 'elle,' *she*. 'Ils' must be used unless the French names of all the persons or things represented by *they* are feminine.

<sup>2</sup> Also *I gave* and *I would give*, meaning *I used to give*.

<sup>3</sup> Also *I shall be giving*.



## CONDITIONAL.

*I should give*<sup>1</sup>  
*you would give*  
*he would give*  
*we should give*  
*you would give*  
*they would give*

**je donnerais** (je-dòn-rè)  
**tu donnerais** (tü-dòn-rè)  
**il donnerait** (il-dòn-rè)  
**nous donnerions** (nu-dò-ne-ryò)  
**vous donneriez** (vu-dò-ne-ryé)  
**ils donneraient** (il-dòn-rè)

## IMPERATIVE.

*give*<sup>2</sup>  
*let's give*  
*give*<sup>2</sup>

**donne** (dòn)  
**donnons** (dò-nò)  
**donnez** (dò-né)

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.<sup>3</sup>

**je donne** (je-dòn)  
**tu donnes** (tü-dòn)  
**il donne** (il-dòn)  
**nous donnions** (nu-dò-nyò)  
**vous donniez** (vu-dò-nyé)  
**ils donnent** (il-dòn)

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.<sup>3</sup>

**je donnasse** (je-dò-nas)  
**tu donnasses** (tü-dò-nas)  
**elle donnât** (èl-dò-na)  
**nous donnassions** (nu-dò-na-syò)  
**vous donnassiez** (vu-dò-na-syé)  
**elles donnassent** (èl-dò-nas)

a. Verbs in *-cer* change *c* to *ç* before *a* and *o*; verbs in *-ger* insert *e* between the *g* and an *a* or *o*. These changes are made in order to show that the *c* and the *g* keep the sounds (s) and (j); the *e* after the *g* is exactly equivalent to the cedilla under the *c*. See § 5, *c*, and § 12. As samples of these two classes of verbs we shall take 'placer,' *to put*, and 'manger,' *to eat*. In the future, the conditional, and the present subjunctive there is no ending that begins with *a* or *o*.

(1) Placer (pla-sé), plaçant (pla-sá), placé (pla-sé).

(2) Manger (má-jé), mangeant (má-já), mangé (má-jé).

<sup>1</sup> Also *I should be giving*.

<sup>2</sup> See §§ 23, 24.

<sup>3</sup> No translation of the subjunctive forms has been given, as the meaning of these forms varies according to the context. See § 19, *c*.

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| je place (je-plas)       | je mange (je-mááj)       |
| tu places (tü-plas)      | tu manges (tü-mááj)      |
| il place (il-plas)       | elle mange (èl-mááj)     |
| nous plaçons (nU-pla-sò) | nous mangeons (nU-má-jò) |
| vous placez (vU-pla-sé)  | vous mangez (vU-má-jé)   |
| ils placent (il-plas)    | elles mangent (èl-mááj)  |

## DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| je plaçais (je-pla-sè)     | je mangeais (je-má-jè)      |
| tu plaçais (tü-pla-sè)     | tu mangeais (tü-má-jè)      |
| il plaçait (il-pla-sè)     | elle mangeait (èl-má-jè)    |
| nous placions (nU-pla-syò) | nous mangions (nU-má-jyò)   |
| vous placiez (vU-pla-syé)  | vous mangiez (vU-má-jyé)    |
| ils plaçaient (il-pla-sè)  | elles mangeaient (èl-má-jè) |

## NARRATIVE PAST.

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| je plaçai (je-pla-sé)      | je mangeai (je-má-jé)       |
| tu plaças (tü-pla-sa)      | tu mangeas (tü-má-ja)       |
| il plaça (il-pla-sa)       | elle mangea (èl-má-ja)      |
| nous plaçâmes (nU-pla-sam) | nous mangeâmes (nU-má-jam)  |
| vous plaçâtes (vU-pla-sat) | vous mangeâtes (vU-má-jat)  |
| ils placèrent (il-pla-sèr) | elles mangèrent (èl-má-jèr) |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| place (plas)     | mange (mááj)     |
| plaçons (pla-sò) | mangeons (má-jò) |
| placez (pla-sé)  | mangez (má-jé)   |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| je plaçasse (je-pla-sas)         | je mangeasse (je-má-jas)         |
| tu plaçasses (tü-pla-sas)        | tu mangeasses (tü-má-jas)        |
| il plaçât (il-pla-sa)            | elle mangeât (èl-má-ja)          |
| nous plaçassions (nU-pla-sa-syò) | nous mangeassions (nU-má-ja-syò) |
| vous plaçassiez (vU-pla-sa-syé)  | vous mangeassiez (vU-má-ja-syé)  |
| ils plaçassent (il-pla-sas)      | elles mangeassent (èl-má-jas)    |

*b.* Verbs in *-oyer* and *-uyer* change the *y* to *i* before the endings *-e*, *-es*, *-ent*, and before the *-er-* of the future and conditional. Verbs in *-ayer* may either keep the *y* throughout or change it to *i* in the cases mentioned. Verbs in *-eyer* always keep the *y*. 'Employer,' *to use*, 'appuyer,' *to lean*, and 'payer,' *to pay*, are examples of the first three classes. The present indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, the future, and the conditional are the only parts of the verb where the change occurs.

- (1) Employer (*â-plwa-yé*), employant (*â-plwa-yâ*), employé (*â-plwa-yé*).
- (2) Appuyer (*a-püi-yé*), appuyant (*a-püi-yâ*), appuyé (*a-püi-yé*).
- (3) Payer (*pè-yé*), payant (*pè-yâ*), payé (*pè-yé*).

INDICATIVE PRESENT.<sup>1</sup>

|                        |                       |                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| j'emploie <sup>2</sup> | j'appuie <sup>2</sup> | je paye <i>or</i> paie <sup>2</sup> |
| tu emploies            | tu appuies            | tu payes <i>or</i> paies            |
| il emploie             | elle appuie           | il paye <i>or</i> paie              |
| nous employons         | nous appuyons         | nous payons                         |
| vous employez          | vous appuyez          | vous payez                          |
| ils emploient          | elles appuient        | ils payent <i>or</i> paient         |

FUTURE.<sup>3</sup>

|                           |                          |   |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| j'emploierai <sup>4</sup> | j'appuierai <sup>4</sup> | je payerai <i>or</i> paierai <sup>4</sup> |
| tu emploieras             | tu appuieras             | tu payeras <i>or</i> paieras              |
| il emploiera              | elle appuiera            | il payera <i>or</i> paiera                |
| nous emploierons          | nous appuierons          | nous payerons <i>or</i> paierons          |
| vous emploierez           | vous appuieriez          | vous payerez <i>or</i> paieriez           |
| ils emploieront           | elles appuieront         | ils payeront <i>or</i> paieront           |

*c.* In some verbs the next-to-last vowel of the infinitive is *é* (*é*): this *é* becomes *è* (*è*) whenever the ending of the verb is *-e*, *-es*, or *-ent* — that is to say, in the singular and third person plural of the present

<sup>1</sup> The three forms of the imperative are identical with the corresponding forms of the indicative present; the present subjunctive is like the indicative, except for the personal endings. When *y* is followed by the ending *-ions* or *-iez*, there is a sound of double (*y*): appuyions, payiez = (*a-püiy-yè*), (*pèy-yé*).

<sup>2</sup> Pronounce (*jà-plwa*), (*ja-püi*), (*je-pè*).

<sup>3</sup> The conditional is like the future, except for the personal endings.

<sup>4</sup> Pronounce (*jà-plwa-ré*), (*ja-püi-ré*), (*je-pè-ré*).

indicative and subjunctive, and in the singular of the imperative. But verbs in *-éer* keep their *é* throughout.<sup>1</sup>

(1) *To yield* = céder (sé-dé), *yielding* = cédant (sé-dâ), *yielded* = cédé (sé-dé).

(2) *To create* = créer (kré-é), *creating* = créant (kré-â), *created* = créé (kré-é).

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| je cède (je-sèd)      | je crée (je-kré)       |
| tu cèdes (tü-sèd)     | tu crées (tü-kré)      |
| il cède (il-sèd)      | elle crée (èl-kré)     |
| nous cédon (nU-sé-dò) | nous créons (nU-kré-ò) |
| vous cédez (vU-sé-dé) | vous créez (vU-kré-é)  |
| ils cèdent (il-sèd)   | elles créent (èl-kré)  |

*d.* In some verbs the next-to-last vowel of the infinitive is *e* (*e*)<sup>2</sup>: this (*e*) becomes (*è*) in the future and conditional and wherever the ending of the verb is *-e*, *-es*, or *-ent*. The vowel (*è*) is spelled in two ways: in most verbs it is written *è*; but verbs in *-eler* and *-eter* indicate the sound by doubling the *l* or the *t* after the *e*. The most important exceptions to this rule are 'geler,' 'peler,' 'acheter,' 'racheter,'<sup>3</sup> which have 'gèle,' 'pèle,' 'achète,' 'rachète.'

(1) *To lift* = lever (le-vé), *lifting* = levant (le-vâ), *lifted* = levé (le-vé).

(2) *To throw* = jeter (je-té), *throwing* = jetant (je-tâ), *thrown* = jeté (je-té).

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| je lève (je-lèv)      | je jette (je-jèt)      |
| tu lèves (tü-lèv)     | tu jettes (tü-jèt)     |
| il lève (il-lèv)      | elle jette (èl-jèt)    |
| nous levons (nU-l-vò) | nous jetons (nUj-tò)   |
| vous levez (vU-l-vé)  | vous jetez (vUj-té)    |
| ils lèvent (il-lèv)   | elles jettent (èl-jèt) |

## FUTURE.

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| je lèverai (je-lèv-ré) | je jetterai (je-jèt-ré) |
|------------------------|-------------------------|

*and so forth*

<sup>1</sup> In the case of verbs in *-éger* some writers still keep the *é* throughout, using 'abrège,' for instance, instead of 'abrègè.'

<sup>2</sup> An *e* followed by a consonant letter in the same syllable [see § 13], as in 'cesser,' 'regretter,' 'rester,' is not pronounced (*e*), and consequently is not affected by this rule.

<sup>3</sup> The complete list is: bourreler, celer, ciseler, écarteler, geler, harceler, marteler, peler; acheter, béqueter, colleter, crocheter, épousseter, étiqueter, haleter; and their compounds. All these verbs are spelled with *è* in the cases mentioned above.

**30.** The verb 'choisir,' *to choose*, will serve as a model of the second conjugation:—

*To choose* = **choisir** (chwa-ziir), *choosing* = **choissant** (chwa-zi-sá),  
*chosen* = **choisi** (chwa-zi).

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>I am choosing or I choose</i>        | <b>je choisis</b> (je-chwa-zi)          |
| <i>you are choosing or you choose</i>   | <b>tu choisis</b> (tü-chwa-zi)          |
| <i>he is choosing or he chooses</i>     | <b>il choisit</b> (il-chwa-zi)          |
| <i>we are choosing or we choose</i>     | <b>nous choisissons</b> (nu-chwa-zi-sò) |
| <i>you are choosing or you choose</i>   | <b>vous choisissez</b> (vu-chwa-zi-sé)  |
| <i>they are choosing or they choose</i> | <b>ils choisissent</b> (il-chwa-zis)    |

## DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>I was choosing or</i> }     | <b>je choisissais</b> (je-chwa-zi-sè)      |
| <i>I used to choose</i> }      |  |
| <i>you were choosing or</i> }  | <b>tu choisissais</b> (tü-chwa-zi-sè)      |
| <i>you used to choose</i> }    |  |
| <i>she was choosing or</i> }   | <b>elle choisissait</b> (èl-chwa-zi-sè)    |
| <i>she used to choose</i> }    |  |
| <i>we were choosing or</i> }   | <b>nous choisissions</b> (nu-chwa-zi-syò)  |
| <i>we used to choose</i> }     |  |
| <i>you were choosing or</i> }  | <b>vous choisissiez</b> (vu-chwa-zi-syé)   |
| <i>you used to choose</i> }    |  |
| <i>they were choosing or</i> } | <b>elles choisissaient</b> (èl-chwa-zi-sè) |
| <i>they used to choose</i> }   |  |

## NARRATIVE PAST.

|                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>I chose</i>    | <b>je choisis</b> (je-chwa-zi)       |
| <i>you chose</i>  | <b>tu choisis</b> (tü-chwa-zi)       |
| <i>he chose</i>   | <b>il choisit</b> (il-chwa-zi)       |
| <i>we chose</i>   | <b>nous choisîmes</b> (nu-chwa-zim)  |
| <i>you chose</i>  | <b>vous choisîtes</b> (vu-chwa-zit)  |
| <i>they chose</i> | <b>ils choisirent</b> (il-chwa-ziir) |

## FUTURE.

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>I shall choose</i>   | <b>je choisirai</b> (je-chwa-zi-ré)     |
| <i>you will choose</i>  | <b>tu choisiras</b> (tü-chwa-zi-ra)     |
| <i>she will choose</i>  | <b>elle choisira</b> (èl-chwa-zi-ra)    |
| <i>we shall choose</i>  | <b>nous choisirons</b> (nU-chwa-zi-rò)  |
| <i>you will choose</i>  | <b>vous choisirez</b> (vU-chwa-zi-ré)   |
| <i>they will choose</i> | <b>elles choisiront</b> (èl-chwa-zi-rò) |

## CONDITIONAL.

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i>I should choose</i>   | <b>je choisirais</b> (je-chwa-zi-rè)     |
| <i>you would choose</i>  | <b>tu choisirais</b> (tü-chwa-zi-rè)     |
| <i>he would choose</i>   | <b>il choisirait</b> (il-chwa-zi-rè)     |
| <i>we should choose</i>  | <b>nous choisirions</b> (nU-chwa-zi-ryò) |
| <i>you would choose</i>  | <b>vous choisiriez</b> (vU-chwa-zi-ryé)  |
| <i>they would choose</i> | <b>ils choisiraient</b> (il-chwa-zi-rè)  |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>choose</i>       | <b>choisis</b> (chwa-zi)        |
| <i>let's choose</i> | <b>choisissons</b> (chwa-zi-sò) |
| <i>choose</i>       | <b>choisissez</b> (chwa-zi-sé)  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>je choisisse</b> (je-chwa-zis)         | <b>je choisisse</b> (je-chwa-zis)         |
| <b>tu choisisses</b> (tü-chwa-zis)        | <b>tu choisisses</b> (tü-chwa-zis)        |
| <b>il choisisse</b> (il-chwa-zis)         | <b>elle choisît</b> (èl-chwa-zi)          |
| <b>nous choisissions</b> (nU-chwa-zi-syò) | <b>nous choisissions</b> (nU-chwa-zi-syò) |
| <b>vous choisissiez</b> (vU-chwa-zi-syé)  | <b>vous choisissiez</b> (vU-chwa-zi-syé)  |
| <b>ils choisissent</b> (il-chwa-zis)      | <b>elles choisissent</b> (èl-chwa-zis)    |

**31.** The verb 'rompre' (ròòpr), *to break*, will serve as a model of the third conjugation:—

*To break* = **rompre** (ròòpr), *breaking* = **rompant** (rò-pà), *broken* = **rompu** (rò-pü).

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| <i>I am breaking or I break</i>        | <b>je romps</b> (je-rò)              |
| <i>you are breaking or you break</i>   | <b>tu romps</b> (tü-rò)              |
| <i>he is breaking or he breaks</i>     | <b>il rompt</b> (il-rò) <sup>1</sup> |
| <i>we are breaking or we break</i>     | <b>nous rompons</b> (nu-rò-pò)       |
| <i>you are breaking or you break</i>   | <b>vous rompez</b> (vu-rò-pé)        |
| <i>they are breaking or they break</i> | <b>ils rompent</b> (il-ròp)          |

## DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

|                              |   |                                   |
|------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| <i>I was breaking or</i>     | } | <b>je rompais</b> (je-rò-pè)      |
| <i>I used to break</i>       |   |                                   |
| <i>you were breaking or</i>  | } | <b>tu rompais</b> (tü-rò-pè)      |
| <i>you used to break</i>     |   |                                   |
| <i>she was breaking or</i>   | } | <b>elle rompait</b> (èl-rò-pè)    |
| <i>she used to break</i>     |   |                                   |
| <i>we were breaking or</i>   | } | <b>nous rompions</b> (nu-rò-pyò)  |
| <i>we used to break</i>      |   |                                   |
| <i>you were breaking or</i>  | } | <b>vous rompiez</b> (vu-rò-pyé)   |
| <i>you used to break</i>     |   |                                   |
| <i>they were breaking or</i> | } | <b>elles rompaient</b> (èl-rò-pè) |
| <i>they used to break</i>    |   |                                   |

## NARRATIVE PAST.

|                   |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>I broke</i>    | <b>je rompis</b> (je-rò-pi)       |
| <i>you broke</i>  | <b>tu rompis</b> (tü-rò-pi)       |
| <i>he broke</i>   | <b>il rompit</b> (il-rò-pi)       |
| <i>we broke</i>   | <b>nous rompîmes</b> (nu-rò-pim)  |
| <i>you broke</i>  | <b>vous rompîtes</b> (vu-rò-pit)  |
| <i>they broke</i> | <b>ils rompirent</b> (il-rò-piir) |

## FUTURE.

|                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>I shall break</i>   | <b>je romprai</b> (je-rò-pré)     |
| <i>you will break</i>  | <b>tu rompras</b> (tü-rò-pra)     |
| <i>she will break</i>  | <b>elle rompra</b> (èl-rò-pra)    |
| <i>we shall break</i>  | <b>nous romprons</b> (nu-rò-prò)  |
| <i>you will break</i>  | <b>vous romprez</b> (vu-rò-pré)   |
| <i>they will break</i> | <b>elles rompront</b> (èl-rò-prò) |

<sup>1</sup> See § 26, iv., (1).

## CONDITIONAL.

|                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>I should break</i>   | <b>je romprais</b> (je-rò-prè)    |
| <i>you would break</i>  | <b>tu romprais</b> (tü-rò-prè)    |
| <i>he would break</i>   | <b>il romprait</b> (il-rò-prè)    |
| <i>we should break</i>  | <b>nous romprions</b> (nu-rò-pyò) |
| <i>you would break</i>  | <b>vous rompriez</b> (vu-rò-pyé)  |
| <i>they would break</i> | <b>ils rompraient</b> (il-rò-prè) |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>break</i>       | <b>romps</b> (rò)      |
| <i>let's break</i> | <b>rompons</b> (rò-pò) |
| <i>break</i>       | <b>rompez</b> (rò-pé)  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                                 |
|---------------------------------|
| <b>je rompe</b> (je-ròòp)       |
| <b>tu rompes</b> (tü-ròòp)      |
| <b>il rompe</b> (il-ròòp)       |
| <b>nous rompons</b> (nu-rò-pyò) |
| <b>vous rompiez</b> (vu-rò-pyé) |
| <b>ils rompent</b> (il-ròòp)    |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|   |
|---|
| <b>je rompisse</b> (je-rò-pis)          |
| <b>tu rompisses</b> (tü-rò-pis)         |
| <b>elle rompît</b> (èl-rò-pi)           |
| <b>nous rompiissions</b> (nu-rò-pi-syò) |
| <b>vous rompiissiez</b> (vu-rò-pi-syé)  |
| <b>elles rompiissent</b> (èl-rò-pis)    |

## Irregular Verbs.

**32.** Following is an alphabetical list of the irregular verbs, with their principal parts. A few very rare or obsolete words have been omitted. Compounds not mentioned below are conjugated like their simple verbs.

Many verbs have special irregularities in the future and conditional, in the singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive, and in the third person plural of the present indicative: see notes *a* and *b* below. All forms not otherwise accounted for may be constructed according to the rules in § 26. A dash indicates that a form is lacking.



*a.* When the first person singular of the future is given, we can construct from it the rest of the future and all of the conditional, by dropping the final *ai* and adding the usual endings. ‘Apercevrai,’ for example, gives us: apercevras, apercevra, apercevrons, apercevrez, apercevront; apercevrais, apercevrais, apercevrait, apercevriers, apercevriez, apercevraient.

*b.* When the first person singular of the present subjunctive is given, we can — by dropping the final *e* and adding the usual endings — construct from it the *rest of the singular* and the *third person plural* of the present subjunctive, and also the *third person plural of the present indicative*. The first and second persons plural of the present subjunctive are formed regularly from the present participle. ‘Apercevoir,’ for instance, has a *present subjunctive* ‘aperçoive,’ ‘aperçoives,’ ‘aperçoive,’ ‘apercevions,’ ‘apercevriez,’ ‘aperçoivent’; and a *third person plural of the present indicative* ‘aperçoivent.’

*c.* Ten verbs are so irregular that they will have to be conjugated more fully. See § 33.

|  | FUTURE.     | PRES. SUBJ. |
|--|-------------|-------------|
| Absoudre, absolvant, absous <sup>1</sup> ; absous, —.        |             |             |
| Acquérir, acquérant, acquis; acquiers, acquis.               | Acquerrai.  | Acquièrè.   |
| Aller, <i>see</i> § 33, (1).                                 |             |             |
| Apercevoir, apercevant, aperçu; aperçois, aperçus.           | Apercevrai. | Aperçoive.  |
| Assaillir, assaillant, assailli; assaille, assaillis.        |             |             |
| Asseoir, asseyant, assis; assieds, assis. <sup>2</sup>       | Assiérai.   |             |
| Atteindre, atteignant, atteint; atteins, atteignis.          |             |             |
| Avoir, <i>see</i> § 33, (2).                                 |             |             |
| Battre, battant, battu; bats, battis.                        |             |             |
| Boire, buvant, bu; bois, bus.                                |             | Boive.      |
| Bouillir, bouillant, bouilli; bous, bouillis.                |             |             |
| Ceindre, ceignant, ceint; ceins, ceignis.                    |             |             |
| Concevoir, concevant, conçu; conçois, conçus.                | Concevrai.  | Conçoive.   |
| Conclure, concluant, conclu; conclus, conclus.               |             |             |
| Conduire, conduisant, conduit; conduis, conduisis.           |             |             |
| Confire, confisant, confit; confis, confis.                  |             |             |
| Connaitre, connaissant, connu; connais, <sup>3</sup> connus. |             |             |
| Conquérir, conquérant, conquis; conquiers, conquis.          | Conquerrai. | Conquière.  |

<sup>1</sup> The feminine of ‘absous’ is ‘absoute.’

<sup>2</sup> Pronounce: (a-swaar), (a-sè-yâ), (a-si); (a-syé), (a-si).

<sup>3</sup> The third person singular of the present indicative has a circumflex accent on the *i*: connaît (κῶ-nè).

|   | FUTURE.     | PRES. SUBJ. |
|---|-------------|-------------|
| Construire, construisant, construit; construis, construisis.  |             |             |
| Contredire, contredisant, contredit; contredis, contredis.    |             |             |
| Coudre, cousant, cousu; couds, cousis.                        |             |             |
| Courir, courant, couru; cours, courus.                        | Courrai.    |             |
| Couvrir, couvrant, couvert; couvre, couvris.                  |             |             |
| Craindre, craignant, craint; crains, craignis.                |             |             |
| Croire, croyant, cru; crois, crus.                            |             | Croie.      |
| Croître, croissant, crû <sup>1</sup> ; crois, crûs.           |             |             |
| Cueillir, cueillant, cueilli; cueille, cueillis. <sup>2</sup> | Cueillerai. |             |
| Cuire, cuisant, cuit; cuis, cuisis.                           |             |             |
| Décevoir, décevant, déçu; déçois, déçus.                      | Décevrai.   | Déçoive.    |
| Décrire, décrivant, décrit; décris, décrivis.                 |             |             |
| Dédire, dédisant, dédit; dédis, dédis.                        |             |             |
| Déduire, déduisant, déduit; déduis, déduisis.                 |             |             |
| Détruire, détruisant, détruit; détruis, détruisis.            |             |             |
| Devoir, devant, dû <sup>3</sup> ; dois, dus.                  | Devrai.     | Doive.      |
| Dire, disant, dit; dis, <sup>4</sup> dis.                     |             |             |
| Dissoudre, dissolvant, dissous <sup>5</sup> ; dissous, —.     |             |             |
| Dormir, dormant, dormi; dors, dormis.                         |             |             |
| Écrire, écrivant, écrit; écris, écrivis.                      |             |             |
| Enquérir, enquérant, enquis; enquiers, enquis.                | Enquerrai.  | Enquière.   |
| Envoyer, envoyant, envoyé; envoie, envoyai.                   | Enverrai.   | Envoie.     |
| Éteindre, éteignant, éteint; éteins, éteignis.                |             |             |
| Être, <i>see</i> § 33, (3).                                   |             |             |
| Étreindre, étreignant, étreint; étreins, étreignis.           |             |             |
| Exclure, excluant, exclu; exclus, exclus.                     |             |             |
| Faillir, faillant, failli; faux, failli.                      |             |             |
| Faire, <i>see</i> § 33, (4).                                  |             |             |
| Falloir, <i>see</i> § 33, (5).                                |             |             |
| Feindre, feignant, feint; feins, feignis.                     |             |             |
| Fuir, fuyant, fui; fuis, fuis.                                |             | Fuie.       |
| Haïr, haïssant, haï; hais, haïs. <sup>6</sup>                 |             |             |
| Inscrire, inscrivant, inscrit; inscris, inscrivis.            |             |             |

<sup>1</sup> The feminine of 'crû' is 'cruë.'

<sup>2</sup> Pronounce: (кѣ-yiir), (кѣ-yā), (кѣ-yi); (кѣÿy), (кѣ-yi).

<sup>3</sup> The feminine of 'dû' is 'due.'

<sup>4</sup> The *second person plural* of the present indicative and imperative is 'dites' (dit).

<sup>5</sup> The feminine of 'dissous' is 'dissoute.'

<sup>6</sup> This verb has "aspirate *h*." The forms with *aï* (a-i) must be carefully distinguished from those with *ai* (è).

|  | FUTURE.     | PRES. SUBJ. |
|--|-------------|-------------|
| Instruire, instruisant, instruit; instruis, instruisis.      |             |             |
| Interdire, interdisant, interdit; interdis, interdis.        |             |             |
| Introduire, introduisant, introduit; introduis, introduisis. |             |             |
| Joindre, joignant, joint; joins, joignis.                    |             |             |
| Lire, lisant, lu; lis, lus.                                  |             |             |
| Luire, luisant, lui; luis, —.                                |             |             |
| Maudire, maudissant, maudit; maudis, maudis.                 |             |             |
| Médire, médisant, médit; médis, médis.                       |             |             |
| Mentir, mentant, menti; mens, mentis.                        |             |             |
| Mettre, mettant, mis; mets, <sup>1</sup> mis.                |             |             |
| Moudre, moulant, moulu; mouds, moulus.                       |             |             |
| Mourir, mourant, mort; meurs, mourus.                        | Mourrai.    | Meure.      |
| Mouvoir, mouvant, mû <sup>2</sup> ; meus, mus.               | Mouvrai.    | Meuve.      |
| Naître, naissant, né; nais, naquis.                          |             |             |
| Nuire, nuisant, nuï; nuis, nuisis.                           |             |             |
| Offrir, offrant, offert; offre, offris.                      |             |             |
| Ouvrir, ouvrant, ouvert; ouvre, ouvris.                      |             |             |
| Paître, paissant, —; pais, —.                                |             |             |
| Paraître, paraissant, paru; parais, <sup>3</sup> parus.      |             |             |
| Partir, partant, parti; pars, partis.                        |             |             |
| Peindre, peignant, peint; peins, peignis.                    |             |             |
| Percevoir, percevant, perçu; perçois, perçus.                | Percevrai.  | Perçoive.   |
| Plaindre, plaignant, plaint; plains, plaignis.               |             |             |
| Plaire, plaisant, plu; plais, <sup>3</sup> plus.             |             |             |
| Pleuvoir, <sup>4</sup> pleuvant, plu; pleut, plut.           | Pleuvra.    |             |
| Pouvoir, <i>see</i> § 33, (6).                               |             |             |
| Pourvoir, pourvoyant, pourvu; pourvois, pourvus.             |             | Pourvoie.   |
| Prescrire, prescrivant, prescrit; prescrist, prescrivis.     |             |             |
| Prévaloir, prévalant, prévalu; prévaux, prévalus.            | Prévaudrai. |             |
| Prédire, prédisant, prédit; prédis, prédis.                  |             |             |
| Prendre, prenant, pris; prends, <sup>5</sup> pris.           |             | Prenne.     |
| Prévoir, prévoyant, prévu; prévois, prévus.                  |             | Prévoie.    |

<sup>1</sup> 'Je mets,' 'tu mets,' 'il met,' 'ils mettent' are pronounced (je-mè), (tü-mè), (il-mè), (il-mèt).

<sup>2</sup> The feminine of 'mû' is 'mue.'

<sup>3</sup> The third person singular of the present indicative of 'paraître' and 'plaire' has a circumflex accent on the *i*: paraît (pa-rè), plaît (plè).

<sup>4</sup> Impersonal: *see* § 48.

<sup>5</sup> 'Je prends,' 'tu prends,' 'il prend,' 'ils prennent' are pronounced (je-prèd), (tü-prèd), (il-prèd), (il-prèn).

|   | FUTURE.    | PRES. SUBJ.          |
|---|------------|----------------------|
| Produire, produisant, produit; produis, produisis.              |            |                      |
| Proscrire, proscrivant, proscrit; proscris, proscrivis.         |            |                      |
| Recevoir, recevant, reçu; reçois, reçois.                       | Recevrai.  | Reçoive.             |
| Réduire, réduisant, réduit; réduis, réduisis.                   |            |                      |
| Repaitre, repaissant, repu; repais, repus.                      |            |                      |
| Repentir, repentant, repenti; repens, repentis.                 |            |                      |
| Requérir, requérant, requis; requiers, requis.                  | Requerrai. | Requière.            |
| Résoudre, résolvant, résolu <sup>1</sup> ; résous, résolus.     |            |                      |
| Rire, riant, ri; ris, ris.                                      |            |                      |
| Savoir, <i>see</i> § 33, (7).                                   |            |                      |
| Séduire, séduisant, séduit; séduis, séduisis.                   |            |                      |
| Sentir, sentant, senti; sens, sentis.                           |            |                      |
| Servir, servant, servi; sers, servis.                           |            |                      |
| Sortir, sortant, sorti; sors, sortis.                           |            |                      |
| Souffrir, souffrant, souffert; souffre, souffris.               |            |                      |
| Souscrire, souscrivant, souscrit; souscris, souscrivis.         |            |                      |
| Suffire, suffisant, suffi; suffis, suffis.                      |            |                      |
| Suivre, suivant, suivi; suis, suivis.                           |            |                      |
| Taire, taisant, tu; tais, tus.                                  |            |                      |
| Teindre, teignant, teint; teins, teignis.                       |            |                      |
| Tenir, tenant, tenu; tiens, tins. <sup>2</sup>                  | Tiendrai.  | Tienne.              |
| Traduire, traduisant, traduit; traduis, traduisis.              |            |                      |
| Traire, trayant, trait; trais, —.                               |            | Traie.               |
| Transcrire, transcrivant, transcrit; transcris, transcrivis.    |            |                      |
| Tressaillir, tressaillant, tressailli; tressaille, tressaillis. |            |                      |
| Vaincre, vainquant, vaincu; vaincs, vainquis.                   |            |                      |
| Valoir, valant, valu; vaux, valus.                              | Vaudrai.   | Vaille. <sup>3</sup> |
| Venir, venant, venu; viens, vins. <sup>2</sup>                  | Viendrai.  | Vienne.              |
| Vêtir, vêtant, vêtu; vêts, <sup>4</sup> vêtis.                  |            |                      |
| Vivre, vivant, vécu; vis, vécus.                                |            |                      |
| Voir, voyant, vu; vois, vis.                                    | Verrai.    | Voie.                |
| Vouloir, <i>see</i> § 33, (10).                                 |            |                      |

**33.** Below will be found the conjugation of 'aller,' 'avoir,' 'être,' 'faire,' ' falloir,' 'pouvoir,' 'savoir,' 'tenir,' 'venir,' 'vouloir.'

<sup>1</sup> Also, in the sense of *dissolved*, 'résous,' feminine 'résoute.' <sup>2</sup> See § 33, (8) and (9).

<sup>3</sup> The third person plural of the *present indicative* is regular: valent (val).

<sup>4</sup> Pronounce (vè).

(1) *To go* = **aller** (a-lé), *going* = **allant** (a-lá), *gone* = **allé** (a-lé).<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES.: *I am going* or *I go*, etc.

|                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>je vais</b> (je-vè) | <b>nous allons</b> (nu-za-lò) |
| <b>tu vas</b> (tü-va)  | <b>vous allez</b> (vu-za-lé)  |
| <b>il va</b> (il-va)   | <b>ils vont</b> (il-vò)       |

DESCR. PAST: *I was going* or *I used to go*, etc.

|                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>j'allais</b> (ja-lè)    | <b>nous allions</b> (nu-za-lyò) |
| <b>tu allais</b> (tü-a-lè) | <b>vous alliez</b> (vu-za-lyé)  |
| <b>il allait</b> (i-la-lè) | <b>ils allaient</b> (il-za-lè)  |

NAR. PAST: *I went*, etc.

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>j'allai</b> (ja-lé)    | <b>nous allâmes</b> (nu-za-lam)  |
| <b>tu allas</b> (tü-a-la) | <b>vous allâtes</b> (vu-za-lat)  |
| <b>il alla</b> (i-la-la)  | <b>ils allèrent</b> (il-za-lèèr) |

FUTURE: *I shall go* or *I shall be going*, etc.<sup>2</sup>

|                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>j'irai</b> (ji-ré)    | <b>nous irons</b> (nu-zi-rò) |
| <b>tu iras</b> (tü-i-ra) | <b>vous irez</b> (vu-zi-ré)  |
| <b>il ira</b> (i-li-ra)  | <b>ils iront</b> (il-zi-rò)  |

CONDITIONAL: *I should go* or *I should be going*, etc.

|                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>j'irais</b> (ji-rè)    | <b>nous irions</b> (nu-zi-ryò) |
| <b>tu irais</b> (tü-i-rè) | <b>vous iriez</b> (vu-zi-ryé)  |
| <b>il irait</b> (i-li-rè) | <b>ils iraient</b> (il-zi-rè)  |

IMPERATIVE: *go*, *let's go*, *go*.

|                |                      |                     |
|----------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| <b>va</b> (va) | <b>allons</b> (a-lò) | <b>allez</b> (a-lé) |
|----------------|----------------------|---------------------|

<sup>1</sup> 'Aller' followed by an infinitive corresponds to the English phrase *to be going to*. Ex.: *I'm going to be frank* = je vais être sincère; *he was going to speak* = il allait parler.

<sup>2</sup> Also *I am going* meaning *I shall go*, as in *I am going there to-morrow*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| j'aille (jaay)     | nous allions (nU-za-lyð) |
| tu ailles (tü-aay) | vous alliez (vU-za-lyé)  |
| il aille (i-laay)  | ils aillent (il-zaay)    |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| j'allasse (ja-las)     | nous allussions (nU-za-la-syð) |
| tu allasses (tü-a-las) | vous allassiez (vU-za-la-syé)  |
| il allât (i-la-la)     | ils allassent (il-za-las)      |

(2) *To have* = **avoir** (a-vwaar), *having* = **ayant** (è-yâ), *had* = **eu** (ü).

IND. PRES.: *I have* or *I am having*, etc.

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| j'ai (jé)     | nous avons (nU-za-vð) |
| tu as (tü-a)  | vous avez (vU-za-vé)  |
| elle a (è-la) | elles ont (èl-zð)     |

DESCR. PAST: *I had* or *I was having* or *I used to have*, etc.

|                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| j'avais (ja-vè)      | nous avions (nU-za-vyð)  |
| tu avais (tü-a-vè)   | vous aviez (vU-za-vyé)   |
| elle avait (è-la-vè) | elles avaient (èl-za-vè) |

NAR. PAST: *I had* or *I got*, etc.

|                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| j'eus (jü)      | nous eûmes (nU-züim)   |
| tu eus (tü-ü)   | vous eûtes (vU-züit)   |
| elle eut (è-lü) | elles eurent (èl-züür) |

FUTURE: *I shall have* or *I shall be having*, etc.

|                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| j'aurai (jò-ré)     | nous aurons (nU-zò-rð)  |
| tu auras (tü-ò-ra)  | vous aurez (vU-zò-ré)   |
| elle aura (è-lò-ra) | elles auront (èl-zò-rð) |

CONDITIONAL: *I should have* or *I should be having*, etc.

|                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| j'aurais (jò-rè)      | nous aurions (nU-zò-ryð)  |
| tu aurais (tü-ò-rè)   | vous auriez (vU-zò-ryé)   |
| elle aurait (è-lò-rè) | elles auraient (èl-zò-rè) |

IMPERATIVE: *have, let's have, have.*

|                |                     |                    |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <b>aie</b> (è) | <b>ayons</b> (è-yò) | <b>ayez</b> (è-yé) |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                        |                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>j'aie</b> (jè)      | <b>nous ayons</b> (nU-zè-yò) |
| <b>tu aies</b> (tü-è)  | <b>vous ayez</b> (vU-zè-yé)  |
| <b>elle ait</b> (è-lè) | <b>elles aient</b> (èl-zè)   |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>j'eusse</b> (jüs)      | <b>nous eussions</b> (nU-zü-syò) |
| <b>tu eusses</b> (tü-iüs) | <b>vous eussiez</b> (vU-zü-syé)  |
| <b>elle eût</b> (è-lü)    | <b>elles eussent</b> (èl-züs)    |

(3) *To be* = être (èètr), *being* = étant (é-tâ), *been* = été (é-té).IND. PRES.: *I am* or *I am being*, etc.

|                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>je suis</b> (je-süi) | <b>nous sommes</b> (nU-sòm) |
| <b>tu es</b> (tü-è)     | <b>vous êtes</b> (vU-zèt)   |
| <b>il est</b> (i-lè)    | <b>ils sont</b> (il-sò)     |

DESCR. PAST: *I was* or *I used to be* or *I was being*, etc.

|                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>j'étais</b> (jé-tè)    | <b>nous étions</b> (nU-zé-tyò) |
| <b>tu étais</b> (tü-é-tè) | <b>vous étiez</b> (vU-zé-tyé)  |
| <b>il était</b> (i-lé-tè) | <b>ils étaient</b> (il-zé-tè)  |

NAR. PAST: *I was*, etc.

|                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>je fus</b> (je-fü) | <b>nous fûmes</b> (nU-füm)  |
| <b>tu fus</b> (tü-fü) | <b>vous fûtes</b> (vU-füt)  |
| <b>il fut</b> (il-fü) | <b>ils furent</b> (il-füür) |

FUTURE: *I shall be*, etc.

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>je serai</b> (jes-ré) | <b>nous serons</b> (nUs-rò) |
| <b>tu seras</b> (tüs-ra) | <b>vous serez</b> (vUs-ré)  |
| <b>il sera</b> (ils-ra)  | <b>ils seront</b> (ils-rò)  |

CONDITIONAL: *I should be, etc.*

|                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>je serais</b> (jes-rè)  | <b>nous serions</b> (nU-se-ryò) |
| <b>tu serais</b> (tü-s-rè) | <b>vous seriez</b> (vU-se-ryé)  |
| <b>il serait</b> (ils-rè)  | <b>ils seraient</b> (ils-rè)    |

IMPERATIVE: *be, let's be, be.*

|                   |                        |                       |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>sois</b> (swa) | <b>soyons</b> (swa-yò) | <b>soyez</b> (swa-yé) |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                         |                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>je sois</b> (je-swa) | <b>nous soyons</b> (nU-swa-yò) |
| <b>tu sois</b> (tü-swa) | <b>vous soyez</b> (vU-swa-yé)  |
| <b>il soit</b> (il-swa) | <b>ils soient</b> (il-swa)     |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je fusse</b> (je-füs)  | <b>nous fussions</b> (nU-fü-syò) |
| <b>tu fusses</b> (tü-füs) | <b>vous fussiez</b> (vU-fü-syé)  |
| <b>il fût</b> (il-fü)     | <b>ils fussent</b> (il-füs)      |

(4) *To do* = **faire** (fèr), *doing* = **faisant** (fe-zâ), *done* = **fait** (fè).<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES.: *I am doing or I do, etc.*

|                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>je fais</b> (je-fè)   | <b>nous faisons</b> (nU-fe-zò) |
| <b>tu fais</b> (tü-fè)   | <b>vous faites</b> (vU-fèt)    |
| <b>elle fait</b> (èl-fè) | <b>elles font</b> (èl-fò)      |

DESCR. PAST: *I was doing or I used to do, etc.*

|                                |                                   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>je faisais</b> (je-fe-zè)   | <b>nous faisions</b> (nU-fe-zyò)  |
| <b>tu faisais</b> (tü-fe-zè)   | <b>vous faisiez</b> (vU-fe-zyé)   |
| <b>elle faisait</b> (èl-fe-zè) | <b>elles faisaient</b> (èl-fe-zè) |

NAR. PAST: *I did, etc.*

|                         |                               |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>je fis</b> (je-fi)   | <b>nous fîmes</b> (nU-fim)    |
| <b>tu fis</b> (tü-fi)   | <b>vous fîtes</b> (vU-fit)    |
| <b>elle fit</b> (èl-fi) | <b>elles firent</b> (èl-fiir) |

<sup>1</sup> 'Faire' means also *to make*.



FUTURE: *I shall do or I shall be doing, etc.*

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>je ferai</b> (jef-ré)  | <b>nous ferons</b> (nuf-rò)  |
| <b>tu feras</b> (tüf-ra)  | <b>vous ferez</b> (vuf-ré)   |
| <b>elle fera</b> (èlf-ra) | <b>elles feront</b> (èlf-rò) |

CONDITIONAL: *I should do or I should be doing, etc.*

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>je ferais</b> (jef-rè)   | <b>nous ferions</b> (nu-fe-ryò) |
| <b>tu ferais</b> (tüf-rè)   | <b>vous feriez</b> (vu-fe-ryé)  |
| <b>elle ferait</b> (èlf-rè) | <b>elles feraient</b> (èlf-rè)  |

IMPERATIVE: *do, let's do, do.*

|                  |                        |                     |
|------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>fais</b> (fè) | <b>faisons</b> (fe-zò) | <b>faites</b> (fèt) |
|------------------|------------------------|---------------------|

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je fasse</b> (je-fas)   | <b>nous fassions</b> (nu-fa-syò) |
| <b>tu fasses</b> (tü-fas)  | <b>vous fassiez</b> (vu-fa-syé)  |
| <b>elle fasse</b> (èl-fas) | <b>elles fassent</b> (èl-fas)    |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je fisse</b> (je-fis)  | <b>nous fissions</b> (nu-fi-syò) |
| <b>tu fisses</b> (tü-fis) | <b>vous fissiez</b> (vu-fi-syé)  |
| <b>elle fît</b> (èl-fi)   | <b>elles fissent</b> (èl-fis)    |

(5) *To be necessary* = **falloir** (fa-lwaar), *been necessary* = **fallu** (fa-lü).<sup>1</sup>

IND. Pres.: *it is necessary.*

**il faut** (il-fó)

DESCR. PAST: *it was necessary or it used to be necessary.*

**il fallait** (il-fa-lè)

NAR. PAST: *it was necessary.*

**il fallut** (il-fa-lü)

---

<sup>1</sup> 'Falloir' is impersonal. It has no present participle and no imperative.

FUTURE: *it will be necessary.*

**il faudra** (il-fó-dra)

CONDITIONAL: *it would be necessary.*

**il faudrait** (il-fó-drè)

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

**il faille** (il-faay)

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

**il fallût** (il-fa-lü)

(6) *To be able* = **pouvoir** (pU-vwaar), *being able* = **pouvant** (pU-vâ), *been able* = **pu** (pü).<sup>1</sup>

IND. Pres.: *I can or I am able, etc.*

**je peux** (je-pö)<sup>2</sup>

**tu peux** (tü-pö)

**elle peut** (èl-pö)

**nous pouvons** (nU-pU-vò)

**vous pouvez** (vU-pU-vé)

**elles peuvent** (èl-pëëv)

DESCR. PAST: *I could or I was able or I used to be able, etc.*

**je pouvais** (je-pU-vè)

**tu pouvais** (tü-pU-vè)

**elle pouvait** (èl-pU-vè)

**nous pouvions** (nU-pU-vyò)

**vous pouviez** (vU-pU-vyé)

**elles pouvaient** (èl-pU-vè)

NAR. PAST: *I was able or I succeeded, etc.*

**je pus** (je-pü)

**tu pus** (tü-pü)

**elle put** (èl-pü)

**nous pûmes** (nU-püm)

**vous pûtes** (vU-piüt)

**elles purent** (èl-püür)

FUTURE: *I shall be able, etc.*

**je pourrai** (je-pU-ré)

**tu pourras** (tü-pU-ra)

**elle pourra** (èl-pU-ra)

**nous pourrons** (nU-pU-rò)

**vous pourrez** (vU-pU-ré)

**elles pourront** (èl-pU-rò)

<sup>1</sup> 'Pouvoir' has no imperative.

<sup>2</sup> Also 'je puis' (je-püi) in the first person singular. The interrogative form of this person, *can I*, is regularly 'puis-je' (püij), *never* 'peux-je.'

CONDITIONAL: *I should be able, etc.*

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>je pourrais</b> (je-pu-rè)   | <b>nous pourrions</b> (nu-pu-ryò)  |
| <b>tu pourrais</b> (tü-pu-rè)   | <b>vous pourriez</b> (vu-pu-ryé)   |
| <b>elle pourrait</b> (èl-pu-rè) | <b>elles pourraient</b> (èl-pu-rè) |

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>je puisse</b> (je-püis)   | <b>nous puissions</b> (nu-püi-syò) |
| <b>tu puisses</b> (tü-püis)  | <b>vous puissiez</b> (vu-püi-syé)  |
| <b>elle puisse</b> (èl-püis) | <b>elles puissent</b> (èl-püis)    |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je pusse</b> (je-püs)  | <b>nous pussions</b> (nu-pü-syò) |
| <b>tu pussés</b> (tü-püs) | <b>vous pussiez</b> (vu-pü-syé)  |
| <b>elle pût</b> (èl-pü)   | <b>elles pussent</b> (èl-püs)    |

- (7) *To know* = **savoir** (sa-vwaar), *knowing* = **sachant** (sa-châ), *known* = **su** (sü).<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES.: *I know, etc.*

|                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>je sais</b> (je-sé) | <b>nous savons</b> (nu-sa-vò) |
| <b>tu sais</b> (tü-sé) | <b>vous savez</b> (vu-sa-vé)  |
| <b>il sait</b> (il-sé) | <b>ils savent</b> (il-saav)   |

DESCR. PAST: *I knew or I used to know, etc.*

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>je savais</b> (je-sa-vè) | <b>nous savions</b> (nu-sa-vyò) |
| <b>tu savais</b> (tü-sa-vè) | <b>vous saviez</b> (vu-sa-vyé)  |
| <b>il savait</b> (il-sa-vè) | <b>ils savaient</b> (il-sa-vè)  |

NAR. PAST: *I learned or I found out, etc.*

|                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>je sus</b> (je-sü) | <b>nous sûmes</b> (nu-süm)  |
| <b>tu sus</b> (tü-sü) | <b>vous sûtes</b> (vu-süt)  |
| <b>il sut</b> (il-sü) | <b>ils surent</b> (il-süür) |

<sup>1</sup> 'Savoir' signifies also *to know how* and *to be able* [meaning *to know how*]. Ex.: *he can sing* = *he knows how to sing* = *il sait chanter*. The negative conditional, '*je ne saurais*,' etc., means *I cannot*, etc. Ex.: *I can't say* = *je ne saurais le dire*.

FUTURE: *I shall know or I shall find out, etc.*

|                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>je saurai</b> (je-sò-ré) | <b>nous saurons</b> (nU-sò-rò) |
| <b>tu sauras</b> (tü-sò-ra) | <b>vous saurez</b> (vU-sò-ré)  |
| <b>il saura</b> (il-sò-ra)  | <b>ils sauront</b> (il-sò-rò)  |

CONDITIONAL: *I should know, etc.*

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je saurais</b> (je-sò-rè) | <b>nous saurions</b> (nU-sò-ryò) |
| <b>tu saurais</b> (tü-sò-rè) | <b>vous sauriez</b> (vU-sò-ryé)  |
| <b>il saurait</b> (il-sò-rè) | <b>ils sauraient</b> (il-sò-rè)  |

IMPERATIVE: *know, let's know, know.*

|                     |                         |                        |
|---------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>sache</b> (sach) | <b>sachons</b> (sa-chò) | <b>sachez</b> (sa-ché) |
|---------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>je sache</b> (je-sach)  | <b>nous sachions</b> (nU-sa-chyò) |
| <b>tu saches</b> (tü-sach) | <b>vous sachiez</b> (vU-sa-chyé)  |
| <b>il sache</b> (il-sach)  | <b>ils sachent</b> (il-sach)      |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je susse</b> (je-süs)  | <b>nous sussions</b> (nU-sü-syò) |
| <b>tu susses</b> (tü-süs) | <b>vous sussiez</b> (vU-sü-syé)  |
| <b>il sût</b> (il-sü)     | <b>ils sussent</b> (il-süs)      |

(8) *To hold* = **tenir** (te-niir), *holding* = **tenant** (te-ná), *held* = **tenu** (te-nü).

'Tenir' is conjugated exactly like 'venir': see (9) below.

(9) *To come* = **venir** (ve-niir), *coming* = **venant** (ve-ná), *come* = **venu** (ve-nü).<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES.: *I am coming or I come, etc.*

|                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>je viens</b> (je-vyé)   | <b>nous venons</b> (nUV-nò)     |
| <b>tu viens</b> (tü-vyé)   | <b>vous venez</b> (vUV-né)      |
| <b>elle vient</b> (èl-vyé) | <b>elles viennent</b> (èl-vyèn) |

<sup>1</sup> 'Venir de,' followed by an infinitive, means *to have just done something: he has just died* = *il vient de mourir.*

DESCR. PAST: *I was coming* or *I used to come*, etc.

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>je venais</b> (jev-nè)   | <b>nous venions</b> (nU-ve-nyð) |
| <b>tu venais</b> (tüv-nè)   | <b>vous veniez</b> (vU-ve-nyé)  |
| <b>elle venait</b> (èlv-nè) | <b>elles venaient</b> (èlv-nè)  |

NAR. PAST: *I came*, etc.

|                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>je vins</b> (je-vè)   | <b>nous vîmes</b> (nU-vèèm)    |
| <b>tu vins</b> (tü-vè)   | <b>vous vîtes</b> (vU-vèèt)    |
| <b>elle vint</b> (èl-vè) | <b>elles vinrent</b> (èl-vèèr) |

FUTURE: *I shall come* or *I shall be coming*, etc.<sup>1</sup>

|                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>je viendrai</b> (je-vyè-dré)  | <b>nous viendrons</b> (nU-vyè-drð)  |
| <b>tu viendras</b> (tü-vyè-dra)  | <b>vous viendrez</b> (vU-vyè-dré)   |
| <b>elle viendra</b> (èl-vyè-dra) | <b>elles viendront</b> (èl-vyè-drð) |

CONDITIONAL: *I should come* or *I should be coming*, etc.

|                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>je viendrais</b> (je-vyè-drè)   | <b>nous viendrions</b> (nU-vyè-dryð)  |
| <b>tu viendrais</b> (tü-vyè-drè)   | <b>vous viendriez</b> (vU-vyè-dryé)   |
| <b>elle viendrait</b> (èl-vyè-drè) | <b>elles viendraient</b> (èl-vyè-drè) |

IMPERATIVE: *come, let's come, come.*

|                    |                       |                      |
|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <b>viens</b> (vyè) | <b>venons</b> (ve-nð) | <b>venez</b> (ve-né) |
|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>je vienne</b> (je-vyèn)   | <b>nous venions</b> (nU-ve-nyð) |
| <b>tu viennes</b> (tü-vyèn)  | <b>vous veniez</b> (vU-ve-nyé)  |
| <b>elle vienne</b> (èl-vyèn) | <b>elles viennent</b> (èl-vyèn) |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>je vinsse</b> (je-vèès)  | <b>nous vinssions</b> (nU-vè-syð) |
| <b>tu vinsses</b> (tü-vèès) | <b>vous vinssiez</b> (vU-vè-syé)  |
| <b>elle vînt</b> (èl-vè)    | <b>elles vinssent</b> (èl-vèès)   |

<sup>1</sup> Also *I am coming* meaning *I shall come*, as in *he is coming to-morrow*.

(10) *To want* = **vouloir** (vU-lwaar), *wanting* = **voulant** (vU-lâ), *wanted* = **voulu** (vU-lü).<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES: *I want* or *I am meaning*, etc.

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>je veux</b> (je-vö) | <b>nous voulons</b> (nU-vU-lô) |
| <b>tu veux</b> (tü-vö) | <b>vous voulez</b> (vU-vU-lé)  |
| <b>il veut</b> (il-vö) | <b>ils veulent</b> (il-vël)    |

DESCR. PAST: *I wanted* or *I used to want* or *I was meaning*, etc.

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je voulais</b> (je-vU-lè) | <b>nous voulions</b> (nU-vU-lyô) |
| <b>tu voulais</b> (tü-vU-lè) | <b>vous vouliez</b> (vU-vU-lyé)  |
| <b>il voulait</b> (il-vU-lè) | <b>ils voulaient</b> (il-vU-lè)  |

NAR. PAST: *I wanted* or *I tried*, etc.

|                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>je voulus</b> (je-vU-lü) | <b>nous voulûmes</b> (nU-vU-lüm)  |
| <b>tu voulus</b> (tü-vU-lü) | <b>vous voulûtes</b> (vU-vU-lüt)  |
| <b>il voulut</b> (il-vU-lü) | <b>ils voulurent</b> (il-vU-lüür) |

FUTURE: *I shall want* or *I shall be wanting*, etc.

|                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je voudrai</b> (je-vU-drè) | <b>nous voudrons</b> (nU-vU-drò) |
| <b>tu voudras</b> (tü-vU-dra) | <b>vous voudrez</b> (vU-vU-dré)  |
| <b>il vaudra</b> (il-vU-dra)  | <b>ils voudront</b> (il-vU-drò)  |

CONDITIONAL: *I should like*, etc.

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>je voudrais</b> (je-vU-drè) | <b>nous voudrions</b> (nU-vU-dryô) |
| <b>tu voudrais</b> (tü-vU-drè) | <b>vous voudriez</b> (vU-vU-dryé)  |
| <b>il voudrait</b> (il-vU-drè) | <b>ils voudraient</b> (il-vU-drè)  |

IMPERATIVE: *wish*, *let's wish*, *wish*.

|                  |                             |  |
|------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>veux</b> (vö) | { <b>voulons</b> (vU-lô) or | { <b>voulez</b> (vU-lé) or             |
|                  | { <b>veillons</b> (vë-yô)   | { <b>veuillez</b> (vë-yé) <sup>2</sup> |

<sup>1</sup> 'Vouloir' signifies *to want* in the sense of *to desire*, not in the sense of *to lack*. It means also *to be willing*; in affirmative clauses, when it has this meaning, it is generally accompanied by the adverb 'bien' (byè), *well*. Ex.: *I am willing* = je veux bien; *he isn't willing* = il ne veut pas; *are you willing* = voulez-vous?

<sup>2</sup> The imperative form 'veuillez' is usually equivalent to English *please*. Ex.: *please write to me* = veuillez m'écrire,

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>je veuille</b> (je-vëëy)  | <b>nous voulions</b> (nU-vU-lyð) |
| <b>tu veuilles</b> (tü-vëëy) | <b>vous vouliez</b> (vU-vU-lyé)  |
| <b>il veuille</b> (il-vëëy)  | <b>ils veuillent</b> (il-vëëy)   |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>je voulusse</b> (je-vU-lüs)  | <b>nous voulussions</b> (nU-vU-lü-syð) |
| <b>tu voulusses</b> (tü-vU-lüs) | <b>vous voulussiez</b> (vU-vU-lü-syé)  |
| <b>il voulût</b> (il-vU-lü)     | <b>ils voulussent</b> (il-vU-lüs)      |

## COMPOUND TENSES.

**34.** For the formation of compound tenses see § 21 and § 21, *a*. The auxiliaries ‘avoir,’ *to have*, and ‘être,’ *to be*, have been conjugated in § 33, (2), (3). For the variations of the past participle consult § 18, *c*, *d*. For the two functions of the present perfect and the two forms of the past perfect see § 21, *b*, *c*. Below will be given a synopsis of the compound tenses of ‘sauter,’ *to jump*, and ‘tomber,’ *to fall*; the first is conjugated with ‘avoir,’ the second with ‘être.’

(1) *To have jumped* = **avoir sauté** (a-vwar-só-té), *having jumped* = **ayant sauté** (è-yâ-só-té).

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I have jumped* or *I have been jumping* or *I jumped*.

**j'ai sauté** (jé-só-té)

IND. PAST PERF.: *I had jumped* or *I had been jumping*.

**j'avais sauté** (ja-vè-só-té)

IND. FUT. PERF.: *I shall have jumped* or *I shall have been jumping*.

**j'aurai sauté** (jò-ré-só-té)

COND. PERF.: *I should have jumped* or *I should have been jumping*.

**j'aurais sauté** (jò-rè-só-té)

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT PERFECT.

j'**aie sauté** (jè-só-té)

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST PERFECT.

j'**eusse sauté** (jüs-só-té)

(2) *To have fallen* = **être tombé** (è-tre-tò-bé), *having fallen* = **étant tombé** (é-tâ-tò-bé).<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I have fallen* or *I have been falling* or *I fell*.

je suis **tombé** (je-süi-tò-bé)

IND. PAST PERF.: *I had fallen* or *I had been falling*.

j'**étais tombé** (jé-tè-tò-bé)

IND. FUT. PERF.: *I shall have fallen*.

je **serai tombé** (jes-ré-tò-bé)

COND. PERF.: *I should have fallen*.

je **serais tombé** (jes-rè-tò-bé)

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT PERFECT.

je **sois tombé** (je-swa-tò-bé)

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST PERFECT.

je **fusse tombé** (je-füs-tò-bé)**PASSIVE VOICE.**

**35.** The formation of the passive has been described in § 16. The auxiliary 'être,' *to be*, has been conjugated in § 33, (3). For the variations of the past participle see § 18, *c*. Below will be found a synopsis of the entire passive of 'oublier,' *to forget*.

<sup>1</sup> The past participle of this verb is 'tombé,' 'tombée,' 'tombés,' or 'tombées,' according to the gender and number of the French name of what has fallen. See § 18, *c*.



*To be forgotten* = **être oublié** (è-trU-bli-é), *to have been forgotten* = **avoir été oublié** (a-vwa-ré-té-U-bli-é); *being forgotten* = **étant oublié** (é-tâ-tU-bli-é), *having been forgotten* = **ayant été oublié** (è-yâ-té-té-U-bli-é).<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES.: *I am forgotten* or *I am being forgotten.*

**je suis oublié** (je-süi-zU-bli-é)

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I have been forgotten* or *I was forgotten.*<sup>2</sup>

**j'ai été oublié** (jé-é-té-U-bli-é)

DESCR. PAST: *I was forgotten* or *I was being forgotten.*

**j'étais oublié** (jé-tè-zU-bli-é)

IND. PAST PERF.: *I had been forgotten.*<sup>3</sup>

**j'avais été oublié** (ja-vè-zé-té-U-bli-é)

NAR. PAST: *I was forgotten.*

**je fus oublié** (je-fü-zU-bli-é)

FUTURE: *I shall be forgotten.*

**je serai oublié** (jes-ré-U-bli-é)

FUTURE PERF.: *I shall have been forgotten.*

**j'aurai été oublié** (jò-ré-é-té-U-bli-é)

CONDITIONAL: *I should be forgotten.*

**je serais oublié** (jes-rè-zU-bli-é)

COND. PERF.: *I should have been forgotten.*

**j'aurais été oublié** (jò-rè-zé-té-U-bli-é)

IMPERATIVE, second person singular: *be forgotten.*

**sois oublié** (swa-zU-bli-é)

<sup>1</sup> The past participle is 'oublié,' 'oubliée,' 'oubliés,' or 'oubliées,' according to the gender and number of the French name of what is forgotten. See § 18, c.

<sup>2</sup> See § 21, b.

<sup>3</sup> See § 21, c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je sois oublié (je-swa-zU-bli-é)

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT PERFECT.

j'aie été oublié (jè-é-té-U-bli-é)

## • SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je fusse oublié (je-fü-SU-bli-é)

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST PERFECT.

j'eusse été oublié (jü-sé-té-U-bli-é)

## INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS.

**36.** In English we often construct interrogative and negative sentences with the help of the word *to do*; the French language has no such auxiliary. Ex.: *do we speak* = *speak we* = parlons-nous (par-lò-nU)? *when does he go* = *when goes he* = quand part-il (kâ-par-til)? *what did you see* = *what saw you* or [see § 21, b] *what have you seen* = que vîtes-vous (ke-vit-vU) or qu'avez-vous vu (ka-vé-vU-vü)? *we don't speak* = *we speak not* = nous ne parlons pas (nun-par-lò-pâ); *why doesn't he go* = *why goes he not* = pourquoi ne part-il pas (pur-kwan-par-til-pâ)? *you didn't see anything* = *you saw nothing* or [see § 21, b] *you haven't seen anything* = vous ne vîtes rien (vun-vit-ryè) or vous n'avez rien vu (vU-na-vé-ryè-vü).

## Interrogation.

**37.** The subject of an interrogative verb may be an interrogative pronoun, a personal pronoun, a possessive pronoun, a demonstrative pronoun, or a noun. If the subject is a noun, it may or may not be modified by an interrogative adjective.

A. — When the subject is an **interrogative pronoun** or a **noun modified by an interrogative adjective**, the construction is generally the same in French and in English. Ex.: *who speaks* = qui parle (ki-parl)? *which one has gone* = lequel est parti (le-kè-lè-par-ti)? *what seats were taken* = quelles places étaient prises (kèl-plas-zé-tè-priiz)?

(1) For interrogative pronouns and adjectives see §§ 90–95. The interrogative pronoun *what*, used as subject of a verb, is ‘qu’est-ce qui’ (kès-ki); *who* is usually ‘qui’ (ki), but sometimes ‘qui est-ce qui’: *what comes of it* = qu’est-ce qui en résulte? *who is speaking* = qui parle or qui est-ce qui parle?

B. — When the subject is a **personal pronoun**, the French interrogative form may be made in either one of two ways:—

(1) The subject may be put after the verb, instead of before it, a hyphen being inserted between the verb and the pronoun: *is it I* = est-ce moi?<sup>1</sup> *do you speak* = parlez-vous? In compound tenses the subject comes immediately after the auxiliary: *have we spoken* = avons-nous parlé? **Before** ‘il,’ ‘elle,’ ‘ils,’ ‘elles,’ or ‘on,’ if the third person of the verb ends in a consonant letter, that letter is pronounced [see § 6, (1)]; if it ends in a vowel letter, a *t* is inserted — with a hyphen before and after — between the verb and the pronoun: *does she go* = part-elle (par-tèl)? *does he sell* = vend-il (vá-til)? *do they speak* = parlent-ils (parl-til)? *does he speak* = parle-t-il (parl-til)? *did she speak* = parla-t-elle (par-la-tèl)? **Before** ‘je,’ if the first person of the verb ends in silent *e*, this *e* is changed to *é* (è): *do I speak* = parlé-je (par-lèèj)?

(2) The phrase ‘**est-ce que**’ (ès-ke) may be prefixed to the affirmative form; the *e* of ‘que’ is elided before a vowel: *it is he* = c’est lui,<sup>1</sup> *is it he* = **est-ce que** c’est lui? *I speak* = je parle, *do I speak* = **est-ce que** je parle? *they have spoken* = ils ont parlé, *have*

<sup>1</sup> For the forms ‘moi’ and ‘lui’ see §§ 71, 74.

*they spoken* = **est-ce qu'ils ont parlé?** If the sentence begins with an interrogative adjective or adverb, this construction is seldom used in written French.

The former method is the commoner, except in the first person singular, where the latter is generally employed. In the present indicative of 'avoir,' 'être,' and 'pouvoir,' however, the forms 'ai-je' (èèj), 'suis-je' (süiij), 'puis-je' (püiij) are more usual than the constructions with 'est-ce que.'

C. — When the subject is a **possessive or demonstrative pronoun**, or a **noun not modified by an interrogative adjective**, the French interrogative form may be made in three ways: —

(1) By adding to the personal verb of the affirmative form a hyphen followed by 'il' (il), 'elle' (èl), 'ils' (il), or 'elles' (èl), according to the gender and number of the subject. See B, (1) on p. 51. Ex. : *mine has come* = le mien est arrivé, *has mine come* = le mien est-il arrivé? *is that one the best* = celle-là est-elle la meilleure? *does Coquelin act this evening* = Coquelin joue-t-il ce soir? *was the house new* = la maison était-elle neuve? *when will these gentlemen go* = ces messieurs **quand** partiront-ils? *have those young ladies gone* = ces demoiselles sont-elles parties?

(2) By prefixing 'est-ce que' to the affirmative form : *that is true* = cela est vrai, *is that true* = **est-ce que** cela est vrai? *will Coquelin act* = **est-ce que** Coquelin jouera? *had my sister gone* = **est-ce que** ma sœur était partie?

(3) By putting the subject after the verb, instead of before it : *what is the minister doing* = que fait le ministre? *how is our aunt* = comment va notre tante? *where are our friends* = où sont nos amis? This construction is not used at all unless the sentence begins with an interrogative word or phrase. It is hardly ever employed with compound tenses; it never occurs with a negative verb, nor with a verb governing a direct object other than the interrogative word or phrase that begins the sentence.

*a.* When all or a part of a direct quotation precedes the verb of saying, that verb is generally put before its subject, as if the sentence were interrogative. Ex.: “*Stop!*” *I said to him.* “*Where are you going?*” = “*Arrêtez-vous,*” lui *dis-je.* “*Où allez vous?*”—“*I am going to my brother’s,*” he *replied* = “*Je vais chez mon frère,*” *répondit-il.*

*b.* The subject is usually put after the verb if the sentence begins with ‘à peine’ (a-pèn), *hardly*, ‘aussi’ (ó-si), *so*, or ‘peut-être’ (pè-tèètr), *perhaps.* Ex.: *hardly had he spoken* = a peine eut-il parlé; *perhaps it would have been better* = peut-être eût-il mieux valu. Several other words and phrases may cause the same inversion.

**38.** The indicative of ‘porter,’ *to carry* or *to wear*, is conjugated interrogatively below: —

PRES.: *do I carry* or *am I carrying*, etc.

|                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| est-ce que je porte (ès-Kej-pòrt) | portons-nous (pòr-tò-nu) |
| portes-tu (pòrt-tü)               | portez-vous (pòr-té-vu)  |
| porte-t-il (pòrt-til)             | portent-ils (pòrt-til)   |

PRES. PERF.: *have I carried* or *have I been carrying* or *did I carry*, etc.

|                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ai-je porté (èj-pòr-té)     | avons-nous porté (a-vò-nu-pòr-té) |
| as-tu porté (a-tü-pòr-té)   | avez-vous porté (a-vé-vu-pòr-té)  |
| a-t-il porté (a-til-pòr-té) | ont-ils porté (ò-til-pòr-té)      |

DESCR. PAST: *was I carrying* or *did I carry*, etc.

|                                       |                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| est-ce que je portais (ès-Kej-pòr-tè) | portions-nous (pòr-tyò-nu) |
| portais-tu (pòr-tè-tü)                | portiez-vous (pòr-tyé-vu)  |
| portait-il (pòr-tè-til)               | portaient-ils (pòr-tè-til) |

PAST PERF.; *had I carried* or *had I been carrying*, etc.

|                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| avais-je porté (a-vèj-pòr-té)    | avions-nous porté (a-vyò-nu-pòr-té) |
| avais-tu porté (a-vè-tü-pòr-té)  | aviez-vous porté (a-vyé-vu-pòr-té)  |
| avait-il porté (a-vè-til-pòr-té) | avaient-ils porté (a-vè-til-pòr-té) |

NAR. PAST: *did I carry*, etc.

|                                      |                             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| est-ce que je portai (ès-Kej-pòr-té) | portâmes-nous (pòr-tam-nu)  |
| portas-tu (pòr-ta-tü)                | portâtes-vous (pòr-tat-vu)  |
| porta-t-il (pòr-ta-til)              | portèrent-ils (pòr-tèr-til) |

FUTURE: *shall I carry or shall I be carrying, etc.*

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| est-ce que je porterai (ès-Kej-pòrt-ré) | porterons-nous (pòrt-rò-nu) |
| porteras-tu (pòrt-ra-tü)                | porterez-vous (pòrt-ré-vu)  |
| portera-t-il (pòrt-ra-til)              | porteront-ils (pòrt-rò-til) |

FUT. PERF.: *shall I have carried or shall I have been carrying, etc.*

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| aurai-je porté (ò-rèj-pòr-té)     | aurons-nous porté (ò-rò-nu-pòr-té) |
| auras-tu porté (ò-ra-tü-pòr-té)   | aurez-vous porté (ò-ré-vu-pòr-té)  |
| aura-t-il porté (ò-ra-til-pòr-té) | auront-ils porté (ò-rò-til-pòr-té) |

### Negation.

**39.** French expressions of negation used with verbs consist of two parts;<sup>1</sup> the first is 'ne' (ne), the second varies according to the sense. 'Ne' always *precedes* the verb it modifies. Before a vowel sound the *e* of 'ne' is replaced by an apostrophe. Ex.: *I am not* = je ne suis pas (jen-süi-pâ); *I have not* = je n'ai pas (jné-pâ). The commonest of these phrases are given below; some of them express restriction rather than negation.

#### (1) Adverbs:—

|                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>hardly, scarcely, barely</i>  | ne . . . guère (ne Gèèr)          |
| <i>never, not ever</i>           | ne . . . jamais (ne ja-mè)        |
| <i>nohow, not anyhow</i>         | ne . . . nullement (ne nül-mâ)    |
| <i>no longer, not any longer</i> | } ne . . . plus (ne plü)          |
| <i>no more, not any more</i>     |                                   |
| <i>not</i>                       | } ne . . . pas (ne pâ)            |
|                                  |                                   |
| <i>nowhere, not anywhere</i>     | ne . . . nulle part (ne nül-paar) |
| <i>only, but</i>                 | ne . . . que (ne ke)              |

<sup>1</sup> See, however, § 41, a.

<sup>2</sup> The difference between 'pas' and 'point' is that 'point' forms a somewhat stronger negation than 'pas.' *At all, after not or nothing, is 'du tout' (dü-tu).*

## (2) Pronouns : —

|                                 |                                       |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>hardly any, scarcely any</i> | n'en . . . guère (nâ gèèr)            |
| <i>nobody, not anybody</i>      | } ne . . . personne (ne pèr-sòn)      |
| <i>no one, not anyone</i>       |                                       |
| <i>no more, not any more</i>    | n'en . . . plus (nâ plü)              |
| <i>none, not any</i>            | } n'en . . . pas (nâ pâ)              |
|                                 |                                       |
| <i>nothing, not anything</i>    | ne . . . rien (ne ryè)                |
| <i>not one</i>                  | ne . . . aucun (ne ó-kĕ) <sup>1</sup> |

## (3) Adjectives : —

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <i>hardly any, scarcely any</i> | ne . . . guère de (ne gèrd)             |
| <i>no, not any</i>              | } ne . . . pas de (ne pâd)              |
|                                 |   |
| <i>no more, not any more</i>    | ne . . . plus de (ne plüd)              |
| <i>not a, not an</i>            | } ne . . . aucun (ne ó-kĕ) <sup>1</sup> |
|                                 |   |
| <i>only</i>                     | ne . . . que (ne ke)                    |

a. Of the *pronouns* mentioned above, those containing 'en' can be used only as direct object of a verb: *he hasn't any more* = il n'en a plus. An English sentence whose subject is *hardly any, no more, or none* must be translated by a different construction in French: *hardly any were seen* = *people saw hardly any* = on n'en vit guère; *none came* = *there came none* = il n'en arriva pas. 'Personne,' 'rien,' and 'aucun' can stand in any relation to the verb: *I speak to no one* = je ne parle à personne; *he finds nothing* = il ne trouve rien; *not one has gone* = aucun n'est parti; *nobody has seen me* = personne ne m'a vu; *nothing is lost* = rien n'est perdu.

b. Of the *adjective phrases* mentioned above, those ending with the preposition 'de' can modify nothing but the direct object of a verb; 'ne . . . que' cannot limit the subject: *they had no friends* = ils n'avaient pas d'amis; *I have seen only two* = je n'ai vu que deux. An English sentence whose subject is qualified by *hardly any, no, no more, or only* must generally be translated by a different construction in French: *hardly any pupils were there* = *there were hardly any pupils* = il n'y

<sup>1</sup> Also 'ne . . . pas un' (ne pâ-zĕ), feminine 'ne . . . pas une' (ne pâ-zün).

avait guère d'élèves; *no more noise is heard* = *people hear no more noise* = on n'entend plus de bruit; *only his dog accompanied him* = *he was accompanied only by his dog* = il n'était accompagné que de son chien. *No* meaning *not a* may, of course, be translated by 'ne . . . aucun' or 'ne . . . nul': *no poet has described it* = aucun poète ne l'a décrit [see § 39, *e*]. *Only* is often rendered by the adjective 'seul' (sël), *alone*, or the adverb 'seulement' (sël-mâ), *only: only Paul remained faithful to him* = Paul seul lui resta fidèle.

*c.* In the combinations 'guère de,' 'pas de,' 'point de,' 'plus de' the 'de' always stands just before the word or phrase modified, and is therefore often separated from the 'guère,' 'pas,' 'point,' or 'plus': *I haven't received any letter* = je n'ai pas reçu de lettre. 'Que,' likewise, immediately precedes the word or phrase limited: *she only laughs* = elle ne fait que rire; *I write this only for my friends* = je n'écris ceci que pour mes amis.

*d.* Before a word beginning with a vowel sound the *e* of 'de' and 'que' is replaced by an apostrophe, and the final consonant letter of 'aucun,' 'jamais,' 'nullement,' 'pas,' 'plus,' 'point,' 'rien' is sounded [see § 6 and § 6, (1)]: *I think only of you* — *I do not think of him* = je ne pense qu'à vous — je ne pense pas à lui (jen-pâs-ka-vu jen-pâs-pâ-za-lüi).

*e.* The adjectives 'aucun' and 'nul' stand immediately before the noun they modify. If that noun is feminine, they become 'aucune' (ó-kiün) and 'nulle' (nül). Ex.: *no sacrifice seemed to him too great* = aucun sacrifice ne lui sembla trop grand; *I see no reason* = je ne vois aucune raison. When the *pronoun* 'aucun' stands for a feminine noun, it becomes 'aucune.'

**40.** When the verb accompanied by one of these phrases is an infinitive, the two parts of the negation are sometimes separated, but oftener stand together before the verb: —

A. — If the second part is 'guère,' 'jamais,' 'pas,' 'plus,' 'point,' or 'rien,' both parts precede the verb: *promise me not to laugh* = promettez-moi de ne pas rire (prò-mè-té-mwa-den-pâ-riir). Nothing can come between the negation and the verb, except a conjunctive object-pronoun or one of the adverbs 'en' and 'y' [see §§ 60-69]: *I advise you not to do it any more* = je vous conseille de ne



plus le faire (jvU-kò-sèy-den-plül-fèèr); *he told me never to go there* = il m'a dit de ne jamais y aller (il-ma-di-den-jamè-zì-a-lé).

(1) Before an infinitive, 'n'en guère,' 'n'en pas,' 'n'en plus,' 'n'en point' become 'ne guère en,' 'ne pas en,' 'ne plus en,' 'ne point en': *he is obliged not to buy any* = il est obligé de ne pas en acheter.

(2) For the position of 'de' see § 39, *c*: *I beg you not to make any promises* = je vous prie de ne point faire de promesses.

B. — If the second part is 'aucun,' 'nul,' 'nullement,' 'nulle part,' 'personne,' or 'que,' it follows the infinitive: *I hope I am not forgetting anybody* = j'espère n'oublier personne (jès-pèr-nu-bli-é-pèr-sòn). The 'ne' precedes the verb; nothing can come between, except 'en,' 'y,' or a conjunctive object-pronoun.

(1) 'Aucun,' 'nul,' and 'que' immediately precede the word or phrase they modify [see § 39, *c*, *e*]: *he intends to come here only once* = il a l'intention de ne venir ici qu'une fois.

*a.* When a negative expression modifies an infinitive dependent on the impersonal verb 'falloir' [see § 33, (5), and § 53], the negation goes with 'falloir,' and not with the infinitive: *you mustn't speak to them* = il ne faut pas leur parler.

**41.** When the verb accompanied by one of these phrases is not an infinitive, the two parts of the negation are separated. — The first part stands just before the verb — in compound tenses, just before the auxiliary; nothing can come between 'ne' and the verb, except 'en,' 'y,' or a conjunctive object-pronoun: *we haven't any money* = nous n'avons pas d'argent (nu-na-vò-pâ-dar-jâ); *you don't believe it* = vous ne le croyez pas (vu-nel-krwa-yé-pâ); *he doesn't go there any more* = il n'y va plus (il-ni-va-plü).<sup>1</sup> — The second

<sup>1</sup> In colloquial French the 'ne' is occasionally omitted: *it isn't I* = c'est pas moi.

*part*, in simple tenses, immediately follows the verb: *she doesn't find it anywhere* = elle ne le trouve nulle part (èl-nel-truv-nül-paar). In compound tenses it is placed sometimes between the auxiliary and the past participle, sometimes just after the participle: —

A. — ‘Guère,’ ‘jamais,’ ‘pas,’ ‘plus,’ ‘point,’ ‘rien’ are put between: <sup>1</sup> *I have never seen him* = je ne l’ai jamais vu (jen-lé-ja-mè-vü); *he hasn't come* = il n’est pas venu (il-nè-pâv-nü); *they have heard nothing* = ils n’ont rien entendu (il-nò-ryè-nâ-tâ-dü).

B. — ‘Aucun,’ ‘nul,’ ‘nullement,’ ‘nulle part,’ ‘personne,’ and ‘que’ come after: *I have accused no one* = je n’ai accusé personne (jnë-a-kü-zé-pèr-sòn); *we have eaten only bread* = nous n’avons mangé que du pain (nu-na-vò-mâ-jék-dü-pè).

(1) For the position of ‘aucun,’ ‘nul,’ and ‘que’ see § 39, *c, e*: *he hasn't made a mistake to-day* = il n’a fait aujourd’hui aucune faute.

(2) For the position of ‘de’ see § 39, *c*: *you have lost no time* = vous n’avez pas perdu de temps.

(3) The words ‘aucun,’ ‘jamais,’ ‘nul,’ ‘nulle part,’ ‘personne,’ and ‘rien’ may be put at the beginning of a sentence; in this case the ‘ne’ stands, as usual, just before the verb: *never will he consent* = jamais il ne consentira; *nobody has come* = personne n’est arrivé; *nothing astonishes me* = rien ne m’étonne. See § 39, *a, e*. For the gender of ‘personne’ and ‘rien’ see § 132, *a*.

*a.* In some cases negation is expressed by ‘ne’ alone: (1) occasionally with the verbs ‘cesser,’ ‘oser,’ ‘pouvoir,’ ‘savoir’; (2) always with the conditional of ‘savoir’ when it expresses the idea of *being able*; (3) generally with a subjunctive dependent on a negation; (4) in certain idiomatic constructions, which must be learned by observation. Ex.: *I dare not speak* = je n’ose parler; *I cannot tell*

<sup>1</sup> Some of these, especially ‘guère’ and ‘rien,’ occasionally follow the participle.

*you* = je ne saurais vous le dire; *there is no one that doesn't know it* = il n'y a personne qui ne le sache; *why doesn't he write in prose* = que n'écrit-il en prose?

*b.* Through a confusion of positive and negative constructions, a 'ne' that implies no negation is regularly used in certain kinds of dependent clauses, *unless the main verb is negative*: (1) with a subjunctive dependent on a verb of fearing or hindering; (2) with a finite verb dependent on a comparative; (3) in various idiomatic constructions, which must be learned by practice. Ex.: *I fear he will come* = je crains qu'il ne vienne; *he is better than people say* = il est meilleur qu'on ne le dit; *since I saw you* = depuis que je ne vous ai vu.

*c.* French adverbs other than the negative expressions just discussed usually occupy the same position as the second part of a negation; that is, unless they begin the sentence, they stand just after the verb: *fortunately we saw her* = heureusement nous l'avons vue; *I often go* = je vais souvent; *people always say* = on dit toujours. An infinitive, however, nearly always precedes all adverbs except 'bien,' *well*, 'mal,' *ill*, and 'trop,' *too much*, which often stand before it: *I advise you to speak softly* = je vous conseille de parler bas; *he asks me to listen well* = il me prie de bien écouter. In compound tenses, short and common adverbs are generally put between the auxiliary and the participle, while long and unusual ones ordinarily follow the participle; but this rule has many exceptions: *she sang well* = elle a bien chanté; *she sang magnificently* = elle a chanté magnifiquement; *they went away yesterday* = ils sont partis hier. The words 'beaucoup,' *much*, 'tant,' *so much*, 'tout,' *all*, 'trop,' *too much*, whether used as adverbs or as pronouns, generally precede the past participle: *I have seen all* = j'ai tout vu.

**42. When a negation is used without any verb, the 'ne' is omitted.** Ex.: "*Have you read it?*" "*Never.*" = "L'avez-vous lu?" "Jamais" (la-vé-vu-lü ja-mè); "*Who is coming?*" "*Not I.*" = "Qui viendra?" "Pas moi" (ki-vyé-dra pâ-mwa); *no more sickness, no more poverty* = plus de maladie, plus de misère (plüd-ma-la-di plüd-mi-zèèr).

(1) When used without a verb, *hardly* is 'à peine' and *only* is 'rien que' or 'seulement'; see § 39, *a, b*; 'pas' and 'plus'

scarcely ever stand entirely alone: *only a flower* = rien qu'une fleur; *no more* = *nothing more* = rien de plus; *no more* = *never more* = jamais plus; *none* = point.

(2) When the adverb *not* does not modify a verb, it is translated, in certain cases, by 'non' (nò): *not only* = non seulement; *I think not* = je crois que non; *whether he does it or not* = qu'il le fasse ou non; *not without glory* = non sans gloire. Sometimes 'non pas' (nò-pâ) is used instead of 'pas': *I'm speaking to him, and not to you* = c'est à lui que je parle, et non pas à vous.

a. *No* and *yes* are 'non' (nò) and 'oui' (wi). In answering a negative statement or a negative question, 'si' (si) is used instead of 'oui.'

b. *Nor* is 'ni.' *Neither . . . nor* is generally 'ni' . . . 'ni,' with 'ne' before the verb, if there is one: *neither this nor that* = ni ceci ni cela; *he has neither father nor mother* = il n'a ni père ni mère. But before finite verbs *neither . . . nor* is to be translated by 'ne' . . . 'ni ne': *they neither sing nor dance* = ils ne chantent ni ne dansent. *Either . . . or* is 'ou' . . . 'ou,' or, before nouns, 'soit' . . . 'soit.' *Both . . . and* is 'et' . . . 'et.'

c. *Neither* or *not either* without any correlative *nor* is 'ni l'un ni l'autre,' with 'ne' before the verb, if there is one: *I haven't seen either* = je n'ai vu ni l'un ni l'autre. *Either* without *or* is 'l'un ou l'autre.'<sup>1</sup> 'L'un' changes its form according to the number and gender of the noun it modifies or represents: singular, *masc.* l'un, *fem.* l'une; plural, *masc.* les uns, *fem.* les unes. 'L'autre' has a plural 'les autres.'

**43.** The indicative of 'grandir,' *to grow*, is conjugated negatively below:—

PRES.: *I hardly grow* or *I'm scarcely growing*, etc.

|                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| je ne grandis guère        | (jen-grâ-di-Gèèr)    |
| tu ne grandis guère        | (tün-grâ-di-Gèèr)    |
| elle ne grandit guère      | (èln-grâ-di-Gèèr)    |
| nous ne grandissons guère  | (nUn-grâ-di-sò-Gèèr) |
| vous ne grandissez guère   | (vUn-grâ-di-sé-Gèèr) |
| elles ne grandissent guère | (èln-grâ-dis-Gèèr)   |

<sup>1</sup> The adverb *either* at the end of a negative sentence is 'non plus': *nor I, either* = ni moi non plus.

PRES. PERF.: *I've never grown* or *I never grew*, etc.

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| je n'ai jamais grandi      | (jné-ja-mè-grâ-di)      |
| tu n'as jamais grandi      | (tü-na-ja-mè-grâ-di)    |
| elle n'a jamais grandi     | (èl-na-ja-mè-grâ-di)    |
| nous n'avons jamais grandi | (nU-na-vò-ja-mè-grâ-di) |
| vous n'avez jamais grandi  | (vU-na-vé-ja-mè-grâ-di) |
| elles n'ont jamais grandi  | (èl-nò-ja-mè-grâ-di)    |

DESCR. PAST: *I didn't ever grow* or *I wasn't ever growing*, etc.

|                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| je ne grandissais jamais      | (jen-grâ-di-sè-ja-mè)  |
| tu ne grandissais jamais      | (tün-grâ-di-sè-ja-mè)  |
| elle ne grandissait jamais    | (èln-grâ-di-sè-ja-mè)  |
| nous ne grandissions jamais   | (nUn-grâ-di-syò-ja-mè) |
| vous ne grandissiez jamais    | (vUn-grâ-di-syé-ja-mè) |
| elles ne grandissaient jamais | (èln-grâ-di-sè-ja-mè)  |

PAST PERF.: *I hadn't grown* or *I hadn't been growing*, etc.

|                            |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| je n'avais pas grandi      | (jna-vè-pâ-grâ-di)    |
| tu n'avais pas grandi      | (tü-na-vè-pâ-grâ-di)  |
| elle n'avait pas grandi    | (èl-na-vè-pâ-grâ-di)  |
| nous n'avions pas grandi   | (nU-na-vyò-pâ-grâ-di) |
| vous n'aviez pas grandi    | (vU-na-vyé-pâ-grâ-di) |
| elles n'avaient pas grandi | (èl-na-vè-pâ-grâ-di)  |

NAR. PAST: *I didn't grow*, etc.

|                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| je ne grandis pas       | (jen-grâ-di-pâ)  |
| tu ne grandis pas       | (tün-grâ-di-pâ)  |
| elle ne grandit pas     | (èln-grâ-di-pâ)  |
| nous ne grandîmes pas   | (nUn-grâ-dim-pâ) |
| vous ne grandîtes pas   | (vUn-grâ-dit-pâ) |
| elles ne grandirent pas | (èln-grâ-dir-pâ) |

FUTURE: *I shall not grow any more*, etc.

|                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| je ne grandirai plus     | (jen-grâ-di-ré-plü) |
| tu ne grandiras plus     | (tün-grâ-di-ra-plü) |
| elle ne grandira plus    | (èln-grâ-di-ra-plü) |
| nous ne grandirons plus  | (nUn-grâ-di-rò-plü) |
| vous ne grandirez plus   | (vUn-grâ-di-ré-plü) |
| elles ne grandiront plus | (èln-grâ-di-rò-plü) |

FUT. PERF.: *I shall not have grown at all, etc.*

|                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| je n'aurai point grandi     | (jnò-ré-pwè-grâ-di)   |
| tu n'auras point grandi     | (tü-nò-ra-pwè-grâ-di) |
| elle n'aura point grandi    | (èl-nò-ra-pwè-grâ-di) |
| nous n'aurons point grandi  | (nU-nò-rò-pwè-grâ-di) |
| vous n'aurez point grandi   | (vU-nò-ré-pwè-grâ-di) |
| elles n'auront point grandi | (èl-nò-rò-pwè-grâ-di) |

**44.** Negative questions combine the constructions mentioned in § 37 with those described in §§ 39-41. Four tenses of the indicative of 'vendre,' *to sell*, are conjugated both negatively and interrogatively below:—

PRES.: *do I sell only bread, etc.*

|                                    |                      |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| est-ce que je ne vends que du pain | (èsk-jen-vâk-dü-pè)  |
| ne vends-tu que du pain            | (ne-vâ-tük-dü-pè)    |
| ne vend-il que du pain             | (ne-vâ-tilk-dü-pè)   |
| ne vendons-nous que du pain        | (ne-vâ-dò-nUK-dü-pè) |
| ne vendez-vous que du pain         | (ne-vâ-dé-vUK-dü-pè) |
| ne vendent-ils que du pain         | (ne-vâd-tilk-dü-pè)  |

PRES. PERF.: *haven't I sold anything or didn't I sell anything, etc.*

|                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| n'ai-je rien vendu      | (nèj-ryè-vâ-dü)      |
| n'as-tu rien vendu      | (na-tü-ryè-vâ-dü)    |
| n'a-t-il rien vendu     | (na-til-ryè-vâ-dü)   |
| n'avons-nous rien vendu | (na-vò-nU-ryè-vâ-dü) |
| n'avez-vous rien vendu  | (na-vé-vU-ryè-vâ-dü) |
| n'ont-ils rien vendu    | (nò-til-ryè-vâ-dü)   |

DESCR. PAST: *wasn't I selling any more, etc.*

|                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| est-ce que je n'en vendais plus | (ès-kej-nâ-vâ-dè-plü) |
| n'en vendais-tu plus            | (nâ-vâ-dè-tü-plü)     |
| n'en vendait-il plus            | (nâ-vâ-dè-til-plü)    |
| n'en vendions-nous plus         | (nâ-vâ-dyò-nU-plü)    |
| n'en vendiez-vous plus          | (nâ-vâ-dyé-vU-plü)    |
| n'en vendaient-ils plus         | (nâ-vâ-dè-til-plü)    |

PAST PERF.: *hadn't I sold any*, etc.

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| n'en avais-je pas vendu    | (ná-na-věj-pâ-vâ-dü)    |
| n'en avais-tu pas vendu    | (ná-na-vè-tü pâ-vâ-dü)  |
| n'en avait-il pas vendu    | (ná-na-vè-til-pâ-vâ-dü) |
| n'en avions-nous pas vendu | (ná-na-vyò-nü-pâ-vâ-dü) |
| n'en aviez-vous pas vendu  | (ná-na-vyé-vü-pâ-vâ-dü) |
| n'en avaient-ils pas vendu | (ná-na-vè-til-pâ-vâ-dü) |

## REFLEXIVE CONJUGATION.

**45.** A verb is reflexive when it represents its subject as acting, either directly or indirectly, upon itself: *I see myself* = je me vois (jem-vwa). A verb is reciprocal when it represents the different parts of its subject as acting on each other: *we see one another* = nous nous voyons (nü-nü-vwa-yò). The compound tenses of all reflexive and reciprocal verbs are formed, in French, with the auxiliary 'être': *you have seen each other* = vous vous êtes vus (vü-vü-zèt-vü). For the agreement of the past participle see § 18, *c, d*. In French no distinction is made between reflexive and reciprocal verbs: 'elles se voient' (èls-vwa) may mean either *they see themselves* or *they see each other*; see, however, § 46, *b*.

*a.* Many verbs are reflexive in French but not in English: *to go away* = s'en aller, *to sit down* = s'asseoir, *to lie down* = se coucher, *to get up* = se lever, *to begin* = se mettre, *to be silent* = se taire.

**46.** The reflexive and reciprocal pronouns, arranged in the order of persons, are:—

SINGULAR.

*me, myself* = me (me)*you, thee, yourself, thyself* = te (te);<sup>1</sup> *in the pos. imp.*,<sup>2</sup> *toi* (twa)<sup>1</sup>*him, her, it, himself, herself, itself, one's self* = se (se)

<sup>1</sup> 'Te' and 'toi' are the forms corresponding to 'tu': see § 23.

<sup>2</sup> The "positive imperative" is the imperative used without any negation.

## PLURAL.

*us, ourselves, each other, one another* = **nous** (nU)

*you, yourself, yourselves, each other, one another* = **vous** (vU)

*them, themselves, each other, one another* = **se** (se)

These words may be either **direct** or **indirect** objects. They stand immediately before the verb — in compound tenses, before the auxiliary; nothing can be put between the reflexive pronoun and the verb, except another conjunctive object-pronoun or one of the adverbs ‘en’ and ‘y’ [see §§ 60–69]: *she places herself there* = elle s’y met (èl-si-mè); *I have gone away* = je m’en suis allé (jmâ-süi-za-lé). But in the *positive imperative*<sup>1</sup> the pronoun stands after the verb, and is joined to it by a hyphen: *get up* = lève-toi (lèv-twa); while *don’t get up* = ne te lève pas (net-lèv-pâ). The *e* of ‘me,’ ‘te,’ ‘se’ is replaced by an apostrophe before a word beginning with a vowel sound.

*a.* The form of reflexive verbs given in the dictionary is always the infinitive accompanied by ‘se,’ the reflexive pronoun of the third person; but when the verb is used in a sentence, the object-pronoun must agree in person and number with the subject.

*b.* Reciprocal verbs are often reinforced by the use of ‘l’un l’autre’: *they love one another* = ils s’aiment l’un l’autre [*if there are only two*] or ils s’aiment les uns les autres [*if there are more than two*]. For the forms of ‘l’un’ and ‘l’autre’ see § 42, *c.* Sometimes this phrase is necessary to distinguish the reciprocal from the reflexive construction.

*c.* Notice the reflexive constructions ‘cela se fait,’ *that is done*, ‘cela se peut,’ *that is possible*, ‘cela se dit,’ *that is said*.

**47.** Below will be found the imperative and several parts of the indicative of the reflexive verbs ‘se mettre à’ (smè-tra), *to begin to*, ‘s’en aller’ (sâ-na-lé), *to go away*,

<sup>1</sup> See n. 2, p. 63.



and 's'asseoir' (sa-swaar), *to sit down*. The first verb will be conjugated affirmatively, the second interrogatively,<sup>1</sup> the third negatively.

(1) *Beginning to read* = se mettant à lire (smè-tâ-ta-liir).

IND. PRES.: *I am beginning to read* or *I begin to read*, etc.

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| je me mets à lire        | (jem-mè-za-liir)      |
| tu te mets à lire        | (tüt-mè-za-liir)      |
| il se met à lire         | (ils-mè-ta-liir)      |
| nous nous mettons à lire | (nU-nU-mè-tò-za-liir) |
| vous vous mettez à lire  | (vU-vU-mè-té-za-liir) |
| ils se mettent à lire    | (ils-mèt-ta-liir)     |

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I've begun to read* or *I began to read*, etc.

|                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| je me suis mis à lire       | (jem-süi-mi-za-liir)             |
| tu t'es mis à lire          | (tü-tè-mi-za-liir)               |
| il s'est mis à lire         | (il-sè-mi-za-liir)               |
| nous nous sommes mis à lire | (nU-nU-sòm-mi-za-liir)           |
| vous vous êtes mis à lire   | (vU-vU-zèt-mi-za-liir)           |
| ils se sont mis à lire      | (ils-sò-mi-za-liir) <sup>2</sup> |

IMPERATIVE: *begin to read*, *let's begin to read*, *begin to read*.

|                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| mets-toi à lire     | (mè-twa-a-liir)    |
| mettons-nous à lire | (mè-tò-nU-za-liir) |
| mettez-vous à lire  | (mè-té-vU-za-liir) |

(2) *Going away* = s'en allant (sâ-na-lâ).

IND. FUTURE: *shall I go away* or *shall I be going away*, etc.

|                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| est-ce que je m'en irai | (ès-kej-mâ-ni-ré) |
| t'en iras-tu            | (tâ-ni-ra-tü)     |
| s'en ira-t-elle         | (sâ-ni-ra-tèl)    |
| nous en irons-nous      | (nU-zâ-ni-rò-nU)  |
| vous en irez-vous       | (vU-zâ-ni-ré-vU)  |
| s'en iront-elles        | (sâ-ni-rò-tèl)    |

<sup>1</sup> Except in the imperative: there is, of course, no interrogative form in this mood.

<sup>2</sup> For the form of the past participle see § 18, a, d.

IND. FUT. PERF.: *shall I have gone away, etc.*

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| m'en serai-je allé        | (màs-rè-ja-lé)                  |
| t'en seras-tu allé        | (tàs-ra-tü-a-lé)                |
| s'en sera-t-elle allée    | (sàs-ra-tè-la-lé)               |
| nous en serons-nous allés | (nU-zàs-rò-nU-za-lé)            |
| vous en serez-vous allés  | (vU-zàs-ré-vU-za-lé)            |
| s'en seront-elles allées  | (sàs-rò-tèl-za-lé) <sup>1</sup> |

IMPERATIVE: *go away, let's go away, go away.*

|                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| va-t'en        | (va-tá) <sup>2</sup> |
| allons-nous-en | (a-lò-nU-zá)         |
| allez-vous-en  | (a-lé-vU-zá)         |

(3) *Not sitting down* = ne s'asseyant pas (ne-sa-sè-yá-pâ)

IND. DESC. PAST: *I didn't sit down or I wasn't sitting down, etc.*

|                            |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| je ne m'asseyais pas       | (jen-ma-sè-yè-pâ)     |
| tu ne t'asseyais pas       | (tün-ta-sè-yè-pâ)     |
| il ne s'asseyait pas       | (iln-sa-sè-yè-pâ)     |
| nous ne nous asseyions pas | (nUn-nU-za-sèy-yò-pâ) |
| vous ne vous asseyiez pas  | (vUn-vU-za-sèy-yé-pâ) |
| ils ne s'asseyaient pas    | (iln-sa-sè-yè-pâ)     |

IND. PAST PERF.: *I hadn't sat down, etc.*

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| je ne m'étais pas assis       | (jen-mé-tè-pâ-za-si)              |
| tu ne t'étais pas assis       | (tün-té-tè-pâ-za-si)              |
| il ne s'était pas assis       | (iln-sé-tè-pâ-za-si)              |
| nous ne nous étions pas assis | (nŮn-nU-zé-tyò-pâ-za-si)          |
| vous ne vous étiez pas assis  | (vUn-vU-zé-tyé-pâ-za-si)          |
| ils ne s'étaient pas assis    | (iln-sé-tè-pâ-za-si) <sup>1</sup> |

IMPERATIVE: *don't sit down, let's not sit down, don't sit down.*

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| ne t'assieds pas     | (ne-ta-syé-pâ)      |
| ne nous asseyons pas | (ne-nU-za-sè-yò-pâ) |
| ne vous asseyez pas  | (ne-vU-za-sè-yé-pâ) |

<sup>1</sup> For the form of the past participle see § 18, a, c, d.

<sup>2</sup> See § 68, a.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**48.** Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, and their subject represents nothing definite. In English the subject of such a verb is *it*; in French the subject is 'il' (il), except with the verb 'être,' where it is 'ce' (se).<sup>1</sup> Ex.: *it snows* = il neige (il-nèj), *it thunders* = il tonne (il-tòn); *it's the twentieth of February* = c'est le vingt février (sèl-vè-fé-vri-é).

*a.* The *e* of 'ce' is replaced by an apostrophe before a word beginning with a vowel sound.

*b.* The impersonal verb 'falloir' has been conjugated in § 33, (5). Its uses will be explained in § 53 and § 53, (1), (2), and § 54, *b.*

**49.** The indicative of the impersonal verb 'il y a,' *there is*, will be found below:—

(1) **Affirmative:**—

PRES.: *there is, there are.*

il y a (i-lya)

PRES. PERF.: *there has been, there have been, there was, there were.*

il y a eu (i-lya-ü)

DESCR. PAST: *there was, there were, there used to be.*

il y avait (i-lya-vè)

PAST PERF.: *there had been.*

il y avait eu (i-lya-vè-tü)

NAR. PAST: *there was, there were.*

il y eut (i-lyü)

---

<sup>1</sup> See, however, § 63, B, (1), (2).

FUTURE: *there will be.*

il y aura (i-lyò-ra)

FUT. PERF.: *there will have been.*

il y aura eu (i-lyò-ra-ü)

(2) Interrogative: —

PRES.: *is there, are there?*

y a-t-il (ya-til)

PRES. PERF.: *has there been, have there been, was there, were there?*

y a-t-il eu (ya-ti-lü)

DESCR. PAST: *was there, were there, did there use to be?*

y avait-il (ya-vè-til)

PAST PERF.: *had there been?*

y avait-il eu (ya-vè-ti-lü)

NAR. PAST: *was there, were there?*

y eut-il (yü-til)

FUTURE: *will there be?*

y aura-t-il (yò-ra-til)

FUT. PERF.: *will there have been?*

y aura-t-il eu (yò-ra-ti-lü)

(3) Negative: —

PRES.: *there isn't, there aren't.*

il n'y a pas (il-nya-pâ)

PRES. PERF.: *there hasn't been, there haven't been, etc.*

il n'y a pas eu (il-nya-pâ-zü)

DESCR. PAST: *there wasn't, there weren't.*

il n'y avait pas (il-nya-vè-pâ)

PAST PERF.: *there hadn't been.*

il n'y avait pas eu (il-nya-vè-pâ-zü)

NAR. PAST: *there wasn't, there weren't.*

il n'y eut pas (il-nyü-pâ)

FUTURE: *there will not be.*

il n'y aura pas (il-nyò-ra-pâ)

FUT. PERF.: *there will not have been.*

il n'y aura pas eu (il-nyò-ra-pâ-zü)

*a.* 'Il y a' means literally *it has there*. In the English expressions *there is, there are, etc., there* is merely an adverb, and the subject of the verb is some following word; in the French phrases 'il y a,' etc., on the other hand, the subject is always 'il,' *it*, and so the verb is always singular. Ex.: *there are seven days* = il y a sept jours.

*b.* When the pronoun 'en' is used with one of these phrases, it stands between the 'y' and the verb: *there is none* = il n'y en a pas. See § 39, (2).

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

**50.** We have already noted the following facts:—

(1) The passive voice, formed in English by means of *to be*, is made in French with the help of 'être': *he is loved by everyone* = il est aimé de tout le monde. See § 16 and § 35.

(2) Compound tenses, constructed in English with the aid of *to have*, are formed in French in some cases with 'avoir,' in others with 'être': *you have been in France* = vous avez été en France; *they had gone to Germany* = ils étaient allés en Allemagne. See § 21; § 21, *a*; § 34.

(3) The future and the conditional, which in English require the help of *shall* and *will*, *should*<sup>1</sup> and *would*, need no auxiliary in French: *I shall sleep* = je dormirai; *she would come* = elle viendrait. See § 26, i.

(4) The English "progressive form," consisting of the present participle preceded by some part of the verb *to be*, does not exist in French: *you are eating* = vous mangez; *we were drinking* = nous buvions. See § 20, a.

(5) An English infinitive preceded by *used to*, or by *would* meaning *used to*, is generally translated by the descriptive past: *whenever they used to see us, they would call us* = toutes les fois qu'ils nous voyaient, ils nous appelaient. See § 20, a.

(6) The French language has nothing corresponding to the English auxiliary *to do*: *why don't you read this book* = pourquoi ne lisez-vous pas ce livre? *I do read it* = je le lis. See § 20, a, and § 36.

(7) The English expression *to have* a thing done, meaning *to cause* it to be done, is rendered by 'faire' followed by the active infinitive: *he has had it sent* = il l'a fait envoyer; *we shall have them come* = nous les ferons venir; *she is having it made* = elle le fait faire. See § 18, i.

(8) *To be going* to do anything is expressed in French by 'aller' with an infinitive: *who is going to sing* = qui va chanter? *what was I going to say* = qu'est-ce que j'allais dire? See p. 37, note 1.

(9) *To be willing* to do something corresponds to 'vouloir' accompanied, in the affirmative forms, by the adverb 'bien': *he is willing to help us* = il veut bien nous aider. See p. 46, note 1.

(10) *To know how* to do anything, or *to be able* meaning *to know how*, is to be translated by 'savoir' with an infinitive: *do you know how to dance* = savez-vous danser? *I can't read* = je

---

<sup>1</sup> In a condition, *should* with the infinitive must be translated by the descriptive past: *if we should write* = *if we wrote* = si nous écrivions; *if he should come* = *if he came* = s'il venait.

ne sais pas lire. See p. 43, note 1. For 'ne saurais,' etc., see § 41, a.

(11) *To have just* done something is rendered by 'venir de' followed by an infinitive: *she had just seen them* = elle venait de les voir. See p. 44, note 1.

51. We have in English the following **modal auxiliaries**: *can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, would*. One of these words and an infinitive without *to* constitute a compound form that is often called the "potential mood." The modal auxiliaries express three sets of ideas: (1) **ability, possibility, or permission**, denoted by *can*,<sup>1</sup> *could*,<sup>1</sup> *may*, and *might*; (2) **necessity or obligation**, denoted by *must*, *shall*,<sup>2</sup> and *should*;<sup>2</sup> (3) **desire**, expressed by *will*<sup>2</sup> and *would*.<sup>2</sup> All these words are really *defective verbs*: they are not conjugated in full, but have only certain tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods; the forms that they lack are supplied by other verbs, such as *be able to*,<sup>1</sup> *be allowed to*, *have to*, *ought to*, *am to*, *want to*, *like to*. *Ought to* and *am to* are themselves defective.

(1) *Can, could, may, might, be able to* are represented in French by the verb 'pouvoir,' *to be able*: see § 33, (6). But when *may* has the sense of *being allowed*, the idea should be expressed by some form of 'permettre,' *to permit*. Ex.: *may we speak* = *is speaking permitted* = *is it permitted to speak* = est-il permis de parler? *may I go there* = *do you allow me to go there* = me permettez-vous d'y aller? *you may write to me* = *I permit you to write to me* = je vous permets de m'écrire.

(2) *Must, shall, should, have to, ought to, am to* are expressed by 'devoir,' *to have to*,<sup>3</sup> and by the impersonal verb 'falloir,' *to be necessary*: see § 32 and § 33, (5).

<sup>1</sup> But *can, could, be able to may* mean also *know how to*: see § 50, (10).

<sup>2</sup> *Shall, should, will, would* are used also to form the future and the conditional: see § 50, (3). *Would* sometimes means *used to*: see § 50 (5).

<sup>3</sup> 'Devoir' means also *to owe*.

(3) *Will, would, want to, like to*<sup>1</sup> correspond to the verb 'vouloir,' *to want*: see § 33, (10).

**52.** 'Pouvoir,' 'devoir,' 'falloir,' and 'vouloir' are not so defective as the corresponding English verbs: hence the mood and tense of the compound are expressed in these auxiliaries, and not in the dependent infinitive. Below will be found a synopsis of the indicative and conditional of 'pouvoir voir' (pu-vwar-vwaar), *to be able to see*, 'devoir parler' (de-vwar-par-lé), *to have to speak*, and 'vouloir chanter' (vu-lwar-châ-té), *to want to sing*; the first will be conjugated affirmatively, the second interrogatively, the third negatively. Notice that no preposition intervenes between these auxiliaries and the dependent infinitive.

(1) **To be able to**: *can, could, may, might*.

IND. PRES.: *I can see or I am able to see.*<sup>2</sup>

je peux voir (je-pö-vwaar)

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I could see or I was able to see.*<sup>3</sup>

j'ai pu voir (jé-pü-vwaar)

DESCR. PAST: *I could see or I was able to see.*<sup>4</sup>

je pouvais voir (je-pU-vè-vwaar)

IND. PAST PERF.: *I had been able to see.*<sup>5</sup>

j'avais pu voir (ja-vè-pü-vwaar)

NAR. PAST: *I was able to see or I succeeded in seeing.*

je pus voir (je-pü-vwaar)

<sup>1</sup> *To like to* is rendered, in most cases, by 'aimer à.'

<sup>2</sup> Also *I may see*.

<sup>3</sup> Also *I have been able to see* and, in dependent clauses, *I can have seen or I may have seen*.

<sup>4</sup> Also *I might see* and *I used to be able to see*.

<sup>5</sup> Also, in dependent clauses, *I could have seen or I might have seen*.



FUTURE: *I shall be able to see or I can see.*

je pourrai voir (je-pU-ré-vwaar)

FUTURE PERF.: *I shall have been able to see.*

j'aurai pu voir (jò-ré-pü-vwaar)

CONDITIONAL: *I could see or I might see.*

je pourrais voir (je-pU-rè-vwaar)

COND. PERF.: *I could have seen or I might have seen.*

j'aurais pu voir (jò-rè-pü-vwaar)

(2) **To have to:** *am to, must, ought to, shall, should.*

IND. PRES.: *must I speak or am I to speak or shall I speak ?<sup>1</sup>*

dois-je parler (dwaj-par-lé)

IND. PRES. PERF.: *did I have to speak or have I had to speak ?<sup>2</sup>*

ai-je dû parler (èj-dü-par-lé)

DESCR. PAST: *did I have to speak ?<sup>3</sup>*

devais-je parler (de-vèj-par-lé)

IND. PAST PERF.: *had I had to speak ?<sup>4</sup>*

avais-je dû parler (a-vèj-dü-par-lé)

NAR. PAST: *did I have to speak ?*

dus-je parler (dij-par-lé)

FUTURE: *shall I have to speak or must I speak or am I to speak ?*

devrai-je parler (de-vrèj-par-lé)

FUTURE PERF.: *shall I have had to speak ?*

aurai-je dû parler (ò-rèj-dü-par-lé)

<sup>1</sup> Also, in colloquial English, *have I got to speak ?*

<sup>2</sup> 'J'ai dû parler' means also *I must have spoken.*

<sup>3</sup> 'Je devais parler' means also *I used to have to speak.*

<sup>4</sup> 'J'avais dû parler' means also *I must have spoken.*

CONDITIONAL: *ought I to speak or should I speak?*

devrais-je parler (de-vrèj-par-lé)

COND. PERF.: *ought I to have spoken or should I have spoken?*

aurais-je dû parler (ò-rèj-dü-par-lé)

(3) **To want to: like to, will, would.**<sup>1</sup>

IND. PRES.: *I will not sing or I won't sing or I don't want to sing.*

je ne veux pas chanter (jen-vö-pâ-châ-té)

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I wouldn't sing or I didn't want to sing.*<sup>2</sup>

je n'ai pas voulu chanter (jné-pâ-vU-lü-châ-té)

DESCR. PAST: *I wouldn't sing or I didn't want to sing.*

je ne voulais pas chanter (jen-vU-lè-pâ-châ-té)

IND. PAST PERF.: *I hadn't wanted to sing.*

je n'avais pas voulu chanter (jna-vè-pâ-vU-lü-châ-té)

NAR. PAST: *I wouldn't sing or I didn't want to sing.*<sup>3</sup>

je ne voulus pas chanter (jen-vU-lü-pâ-châ-té)

FUTURE: *I shall not want to sing.*

je ne voudrai pas chanter (jen-vU-drè-pâ-châ-té)

FUTURE PERF.: *I shall not have wanted to sing.*

je n'aurai pas voulu chanter (jnò-ré-pâ-vU-lü-châ-té)

CONDITIONAL: *I shouldn't like to sing or I wouldn't sing.*

je ne voudrais pas chanter (jen-vU-drè-pâ-châ-té)

COND. PERF.: *I wouldn't have sung.*<sup>4</sup>

je n'aurais pas voulu chanter (jnò-rè-pâ-vU-lü-châ-té)

<sup>1</sup> 'Vouloir' means also *to be willing*: see § 50, (9).

<sup>2</sup> Also *I haven't wanted to sing*.

<sup>3</sup> 'Je voulus chanter' means also *I tried to sing*.

<sup>4</sup> 'J'aurais voulu chanter' means also *I should have liked to sing* or; in colloquial English, *I should like to have sung* or *I should have liked to have sung*.

53. When the subject of English *must* or *have to* is a noun or a personal or possessive or demonstrative pronoun, 'falloir' may be used in French. This verb is always in the third person singular, and its subject is invariably 'il,' *it*. 'Falloir' may be followed either (1) by an infinitive or (2) by 'que' with the subjunctive: *I must go* = (1) *it is necessary for me to go* = il me faut aller (ilm-fó-ta-lé), or (2) *it is necessary that I go* = il faut que j'aille (il-fók-jaay). If the subject of the English *must* or *have to* is a personal pronoun, either of these two constructions may be used in French; but the infinitive is generally preferred. If, on the other hand, the subject of the English auxiliary is a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, 'falloir' must be followed by the subjunctive.

(1) When a dependent infinitive is employed, 'falloir' is usually preceded by an indirect object-pronoun [see §§ 56-69], which is of the same person and number as the subject of the English *must* or *have to*: *we must speak* = *it is necessary for us to speak* = il nous faut parler; *he must write* = *it is necessary for him to write* = il lui faut écrire. This object is, however, omitted in the following three cases: when the statement is general; when 'falloir' is accompanied by a negative; and commonly when the infinitive is itself preceded by a pronoun. Ex.: *we* or *you* or *they* [that is, *people in general*] *must have patience* = il faut avoir de la patience; *you mustn't do that* = il ne faut pas faire cela; *we must explain ourselves* = il faut nous expliquer. If this omission would cause any ambiguity, the subjunctive construction must be used.

(2) When 'falloir' is followed by the subjunctive, the subject of the English *must* or *have to* becomes, in French, the subject of the dependent verb: *John must see them* = *it is necessary that John see them* = il faut que Jean les voie. If 'falloir' is in the present, the present perfect, the future, or the future perfect, the dependent subjunctive must be in the *present* tense; but if

'falloir' is in the past, the past perfect, or the conditional, the *past* tense of the subjunctive must be used: *she has to come* = il faut qu'elle vienne; *she had to come* = il fallut qu'elle vînt.<sup>1</sup>

a. 'Falloir' has been conjugated in § 33, (5).

b. When, in English, *mustn't* is used, the negative, in French, is combined with 'falloir,' although it seems to belong logically to the dependent verb: *you mustn't laugh* = il ne faut pas rire; *she mustn't know of it* = il ne faut pas qu'elle le sache. Compare § 40, B, a.

**54.** Examples of the use of 'falloir,' both with the infinitive and with the subjunctive, are given below:—

IND. PRES.: *I mustn't do it.*

il ne faut pas le faire (iln-fó-pâl-fèèr)

il ne faut pas que je le fasse (iln-fó-pâK-jel-fas)

IND. PRES. PERF.: *you have had to go away.*

il t'a fallu partir (il-ta-fa-lü-par-tiir)

il a fallu que tu partes (i-la-fa-lük-tü-part)

DESCR. PAST: *he used to have to work.*

il lui fallait travailler (il-lüi-fa-lè-tra-va-yé)

il fallait qu'il travaillât (il-fa-lè-kil-tra-va-ya)

IND. PAST PERF.: *she had had to remain.*

il lui avait fallu rester (il-lüi-a-vè-fa-lü-rès-té)

il avait fallu qu'elle restât (i-la-vè-fa-lü-kèl-rès-ta)

NAR. PAST: *we had to go out.*

il nous fallut sortir (il-nu-fa-lü-sòr-tiir)

il fallut que nous sortissions (il-fa-lük-nu-sòr-ti-syð)

FUTURE: *what will you have to say?*

que vous faudra-t-il dire (ke-vu-fó-dra-til-diir)

que faudra-t-il que vous disiez (ke-fó-dra-tilk-vu-di-zyé)

<sup>1</sup> See § 19, c, and § 20, d.

CONDITIONAL: *they* [masc.] *would have to run.*

il leur faudrait courir (il-lër-fó-drè-KU-riir)  
il faudrait qu'ils courussent (il-fó-drè-kil-KU-rüs)

COND. PERF.: *would they* [fem.] *have had to come?*

leur aurait-il fallu venir (lë-rò-rè-til-fa-lüv-niir)  
aurait-il fallu qu'elles vinsent (ò-rè-til-fa-lü-kèl-vèès)

a. 'Falloir' is used also to translate the English verb *to need*, followed by a direct object.<sup>1</sup> In this case the subject of *need* becomes, in French, the indirect object of 'falloir'; if it is anything but a personal pronoun, it must be preceded by the preposition 'à.' Ex.: *what does this gentleman need* = que faut-il à ce monsieur? *do you need a book* = vous faut-il un livre? *he needed three francs* = il lui fallait trois francs; *I shall not need anything* = il ne me faudra rien.

**55.** In English, in answering a question, we often repeat the auxiliary of the verb that has just been used; in French, on the other hand, we must repeat either the entire verb or no part of it at all.

Ex.: "*Is he coming?*" "*No, he isn't*" = "Vient-il?" "Non, il ne vient pas" [*or simply* "Non"]; "*Do you smoke?*" "*Yes, I do*" = "Fumez-vous?" "Oui, je fume" [*or simply* "Oui"]; "*Will she give it to me?*" "*Yes, she will*" = "Me le donnera-t-elle?" "Oui, elle vous le donnera" [*or simply* "Oui"]; "*Have I seen him?*" "*No, you haven't*" = "Est-ce que je l'ai vu?" "Non, vous ne l'avez pas vu" [*or simply* "Non"].

a. The modal auxiliaries, however, can be repeated without the dependent infinitive; in this case they are generally preceded by the object-pronoun 'le' (le), *it*. Ex.: *yes, I must* = oui, il le faut; *no, you mustn't* = non, il ne le faut pas; *yes, he can* = oui, il le peut; *no, we won't* = non, nous ne le voulons pas. But *I won't* is usually 'je ne veux pas.'

<sup>1</sup> 'To need' is expressed also by 'avoir besoin de,' *to have need of*.

## 3. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

56. We have in modern colloquial English the following personal pronouns:—

|                | SINGULAR.                    | PLURAL.           |
|----------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| First Person:  | <i>I, me</i>                 | <i>we, us</i>     |
| Second Person: | <i>you</i>                   | <i>you</i>        |
| Third Person:  | <i>he, him; she, her; it</i> | <i>they, them</i> |

It is to be noted that the pronouns of the first and third persons, except *it*, have separate forms for the nominative and the objective case; in the second person the cases are not distinguished.

We shall see presently that in French the distinctions are not quite the same: (1) there are separate forms for the two cases *everywhere except in the first and second persons plural*; (2) in the third person the direct object has not the same form as the indirect; (3) there is no word precisely corresponding to *it*; (4) in the third person plural the masculine pronoun is often different from the feminine; (5) many of the pronouns have, in the objective, different forms, according as they are emphatic or unemphatic.

*a.* Sometimes a word that is a direct object in one language becomes an indirect object in the other: *to allow, to answer, to obey, to please* are, in French, ‘*permettre à,*’ *to allow to,* ‘*répondre à,*’ *to answer to,* ‘*obéir à,*’ *to obey to,* ‘*plaire à,*’ *to please to;* while *to ask for, to listen to, to wait for* are simply ‘*demander,*’ ‘*écouter,*’ ‘*attendre.*’ Even when both languages use prepositions, they often require different ones; for instance, *of* after verbs meaning *to think*, and *from* after verbs meaning *to take away* are translated by ‘*à,*’ *to:* *I think of my brother* = *je pense à mon frère;*<sup>1</sup> *he has stolen a dollar from this*

<sup>1</sup> But when ‘*penser*’ means *to have an opinion*, it is followed by ‘*de*’: *what do you think of that* = *que pensez-vous de cela?*

*gentleman* = il a volé un dollar à ce monsieur. The expression 'être à' means *to belong to*.<sup>1</sup>

b. If any part of the subject or object represented by *they* or *them* is masculine, the pronoun must be rendered in French by the masculine form: *I have seen his father, his mother, and his sisters—they are all here* = j'ai vu son père, sa mère, et ses sœurs — **ils** sont tous ici.

c. An English pronoun of the third person, used, in a general statement, as the antecedent of a relative clause, must be translated by a demonstrative and not by a personal pronoun: *he who does not work has no right to eat* = celui qui ne travaille pas n'a pas le droit de manger. See §§ 100, 101.

d. See § 63, a.

**57.** The preposition that stands before an indirect object is in English *to*, in French 'à' (a): *I have lent it to his brother* = je l'ai prêté à son frère (jlé-prè-té-a-sò-frèèr).

If the indirect object is a noun, this preposition, which is sometimes suppressed in English, is never omitted in French: *I shall tell my father everything* = *I shall tell everything to my father* = je dirai tout à mon père (jdi-ré-tu-amò-pèèr).

If, on the other hand, the indirect object is a personal pronoun, the preposition is left out far oftener in French than in English: *you give the books to them* or *you give them the books* = vous leur donnez les livres (vu-lër-dò-né-lè-liivr); *I speak to him* = je lui parle (jlüi-parl). In fact, 'à' is regularly omitted in French before an object-pronoun, except in the following cases:—

(1) With verbs of motion; with 'penser' and 'songer,' *to think*;<sup>2</sup> with 'être' meaning *to belong*;<sup>2</sup> and with a few other verbs. Ex.: *he comes to me* = il vient à moi;<sup>3</sup> *I think of him* = je pense à lui; *they belong to us* = ils sont à nous.

<sup>1</sup> The proper use of prepositions must be learned by careful observation.

<sup>2</sup> See § 56, a.

<sup>3</sup> When verbs of motion are not used in their literal sense, the 'à' is dropped: *an idea occurs to me* = il me vient une idée; *this gown is becoming to her* = cette robe lui va bien.

(2) With a verb that has for its direct object 'se'<sup>1</sup> or a pronoun of the first or second person: *he gives himself to me* = il se donne à moi; *introduce me to them* = présentez-moi à eux; *she sent you to him* = elle vous envoya à lui.

(3) With a verb that has two or more indirect objects: *we have written to him and to her* = nous avons écrit à lui et à elle; *I am speaking to you and your friends* = je parle à vous et à vos amis.<sup>2</sup>

(4) When the indirect object is to be made emphatic: *this book isn't yours — I gave it to him* = ce livre n'est pas à vous — je l'ai donné à lui.

**58.** French personal pronouns may be divided into two classes, *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*. The **conjunctive** forms are closely connected with the verb, which they generally precede; they are always unemphatic. The **disjunctive** pronouns usually follow the verb, and do not necessarily stand near it; they are always more or less emphatic.

**59.** In general, the **conjunctive** pronouns are used (1) as subject of a verb, (2) as direct object, and (3) as indirect object without a preposition: (1) *I walk* = je marche (jmarch); (2) *he sees me* = il **me** voit (ilm-vwa); (3) *she speaks to me* = elle **me** parle (èlm-parl).

The **disjunctive** forms are employed (1) after prepositions, (2) as predicate nominative after the verb *to be*, and (3) when the pronoun stands without a verb: (1) *he thinks of me* = il pense à **moi** (il-pâ-sa-mwa); (2) *it is I* = c'est **moi** (sè-mwa); (3) "*Who will come?*" "*I*" = "*Qui viendra?*" "**Moi**" (ki-vyè-dra mwa).

<sup>1</sup> See § 46.

<sup>2</sup> When several nouns or pronouns follow a preposition, this preposition is generally expressed, in French, before every one of the objects.



## Conjunctive Forms.

60. The conjunctive forms are given below:—

| SINGULAR.                         |                   |                  |                   |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
|                                   | SUBJECT.          | DIRECT OBJECT.   | INDIRECT OBJECT.  |
| <i>First Person :</i>             | <b>je</b> (je)    | <b>me</b> (me)   | <b>me</b> (me)    |
| <i>Second Person :</i>            | <b>tu</b> (tü)    | <b>te</b> (te)   | <b>te</b> (te)    |
| <i>Third Person — Masculine :</i> | <b>il</b> (il)    | <b>le</b> (le)   | <b>lui</b> (lüi)  |
| <i>Feminine :</i>                 | <b>elle</b> (èl)  | <b>la</b> (la)   | <b>lui</b> (lüi)  |
| PLURAL.                           |                   |                  |                   |
|                                   | SUBJECT.          | DIRECT OBJECT.   | INDIRECT OBJECT.  |
| <i>First Person :</i>             | <b>nous</b> (nU)  | <b>nous</b> (nU) | <b>nous</b> (nU)  |
| <i>Second Person :</i>            | <b>vous</b> (vU)  | <b>vous</b> (vU) | <b>vous</b> (vU)  |
| <i>Third Person — Masculine :</i> | <b>ils</b> (il)   | <b>les</b> (lè)  | <b>leur</b> (lër) |
| <i>Feminine :</i>                 | <b>elles</b> (èl) | <b>les</b> (lè)  | <b>leur</b> (lër) |

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound ‘nous,’ ‘vous,’ ‘ils,’ ‘elles,’ ‘les’ are pronounced (nuz), (vuz), (ilz), (èlz), (lèz),<sup>1</sup> and the vowel of ‘je,’ ‘me,’ ‘te,’ ‘le,’ ‘la’ is replaced by an apostrophe: *we have* = nous avons (nu-za-vò); *I have* = j’ai (jé). For the conjunctive personal pronouns ‘on,’ ‘en,’ ‘y’ see § 62, *a*; § 63; § 64; § 65. For the conjunctive reflexive pronoun ‘se’ see §§ 46, 47. For the difference between ‘tu’ and ‘vous’ see § 23.

*a.* When the same personal pronoun is the subject of several verbs, it is often left out before all the verbs except the first; this omission is rarer in French than in English. Ex.: *I shall observe, listen, and tell you everything* = j’observerai, j’écouterai, et je vous dirai tout.

61. Great care must be taken to distinguish the direct from the indirect object in the third person. Whenever English *him, her, it, them* can be replaced by *to him, to her, to it, to them*, these words are **indirect objects**.

<sup>1</sup> In colloquial Parisian French, ‘il,’ ‘ils’ are pronounced (il), (iz) before vowel sounds, and (i), (i) under all other conditions.

Ex. : *offer him a cigar* = *offer a cigar to him* = offrez-lui un cigare ; *I give her a flower* = *I give a flower to her* = je lui donne une fleur ; *he told them a story* = *he told a story to them* = il leur raconta une histoire.

a. When the verb 'faire,' *to make*, is followed by a dependent infinitive, and this infinitive has a direct object, any object governed by the main verb is treated as an indirect object : *I make them read* = je les fais lire, *I make them read this book* = je leur fais lire ce livre ; *he made her drink* = il la fit boire, *he made her drink it* = il le lui fit boire. Compare § 18, *i*, and § 68, *b*.

**62.** All French nouns are either masculine or feminine ; hence no pronoun is needed exactly corresponding to English *it*. Personal pronouns take the gender and number of the nouns they represent. For instance, in speaking of 'un arbre' (ĕ-narbr), *a tree*, which is masculine, we must say 'il est grand' (i-lè-grâ), *it is tall*, 'je le vois' (jel-vwa), *I see it* ; but referring to 'la maison' (la-mè-zò), *the house*, a feminine noun, we say 'elle est grande' (è-lè-grââd), *it is tall*, 'je la vois' (jla-vwa), *I see it*. Similarly, in the plural, if we mean 'les arbres' (lè-zarbr), *the trees*, we say 'ils sont grands' (il-sò-grâ), *they are tall*, 'je les vois' (jlè-vwa), *I see them* ; and if we refer to 'les maisons' (lè-mè-zò), *the houses*, we must say 'elles sont grandes' (èl-sò-grââd), *they are tall*, 'je les vois' (jlè-vwa), *I see them*. See § 56, *b*.

a. *To it, to them*, referring to things, are generally translated by 'y' (i) : *I don't pay any attention to it* = je n'y fais pas attention ; *she will conform to them* = elle s'y conformera. Compare §§ 63, 66, 75.

**63.** Sometimes, however, *it* does not represent any particular noun, but something indefinite, or else a whole phrase, sentence, or idea. In this case it is translated as follows :—

SUBJECT  $\begin{cases} \text{ce (se)}^1 \text{ or} \\ \text{il (il)}. \end{cases}$  — DIRECT OBJECT: **le** (le). — INDIRECT OBJECT: **y** (i).

EX.: “*It rains*” “*It’s true*” = “**Il** pleut” “**C**’est vrai”; “*What do you think of what he told us?*” “*I don’t believe it*” = “Que pensez-vous de ce qu’il nous a dit?” “Je ne **le** crois pas”; “*Will you grant me what I have asked of you?*” “*No, I shall never consent to it*” = “M’accorderez-vous ce que je vous ai demandé?” “Non, je n’y consentirai jamais.”

A. — The verb ‘être,’ when preceded by ‘ce’ and followed by a *plural noun* or a pronoun of the *third person plural*, must itself be in the plural number: *it is your friends* = ce sont vos amis (se-sò-vò-za-mi); *it was they* = c’étaient eux (sé-tè-tö). But *it is we*, *it was you* = c’est nous (sè-nu), c’était vous (sé-tè-vu).

B. — ‘Ce’ and ‘il’ are not interchangeable. In general, ‘ce’ is used with ‘être,’ and ‘il’ with all other verbs: *it’s the fifth of April* = c’est le cinq avril (sèl-sè-ka-vril); *it appears* = il paraît (il-pa-rè); *it seems to me* = il me semble (ilm-sââbl).<sup>2</sup> In the following cases, however, ‘il’ takes the place of ‘ce’ :—

(1) In telling the time of day: *it’s two o’clock* = il est deux heures.

(2) When ‘être,’ used impersonally, is followed by a predicate adjective on which an infinitive or a clause depends: *it is good* = c’est bon, *it is good to work* = il est bon de travailler; *it is certain* = c’est certain, *it is certain that they will come* = il est certain qu’elles viendront.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See § 48 and § 48, a. ‘Ce’ is used only in the nominative case.

<sup>2</sup> Also ‘ce me semble’ when no dependent clause follows. ‘Ce’ occurs also before ‘devoir’ and ‘pouvoir’ used as auxiliaries of ‘être’: *it must be true* = ce doit être vrai; *it might be he* = ce pourrait être lui. On the other hand, ‘il’ is used for ‘ce’ in the parenthetical clause ‘il est vrai,’ *it is true*.

<sup>3</sup> In colloquial French ‘ce’ is very often used in this case.

a. English *he, she, it, they*, used with the verb *to be* followed by a predicate noun, are frequently rendered by 'ce'; they are always so translated, in such cases, unless the noun they represent has just been mentioned. Ex.: *he is my best friend* = c'est mon meilleur ami; *they are socialists* = ce sont des socialistes; *she is my sister* = c'est ma sœur.

b. 'C'est' before an adjective is often equivalent to *that is*. Ex.: *that's good* = c'est bon; *that's so* = c'est vrai. 'C'est' and 'ce sont' are sometimes used to translate *this is* or *that is, these are* or *those are*, followed by a noun or a pronoun: *this is he* = c'est lui; *those are my brothers* = ce sont mes frères. But when the predicate nominative is a noun or a possessive pronoun, these phrases are oftener rendered by the demonstrative adverbs 'voici' (vwa-si), *here is, here are*, and 'voilà' (vwa-la), *there is, there are*. Ex.: *these are my horses* = voici mes chevaux; *that is his carriage* = voilà sa voiture. *Here I am, there I am; here you are, there you are*; etc. = me voici, me voilà; te voici, te voilà; le or la voici, le or la voilà; nous voici, nous voilà; vous voici, vous voilà; les voici, les voilà. *Here is some, here are some* = en voici; *there is some, there are some* = en voilà.

c. 'Il' corresponds to the English expletive *there*, used to take the place of the subject at the beginning of a sentence: *there was once a king* = il était une fois un roi; *there were three sisters* = il était trois sœurs; *there occurs to me an idea* = il me vient une idée. See § 48.

d. The object-pronoun *it* is sometimes understood in English, but in French it is nearly always expressed: *don't tell* = ne le dites pas; *I'll find out* = je le saurai.

e. Whenever *so* means *it*, we must translate it by 'le': *he thinks so* = il le croit; *you say so* = vous le dites; *do so* = faites-le. This *so* is often omitted in English, but it must be expressed in French: "Are you satisfied?" "We are" = "Êtes-vous contents?" "Nous le sommes"; "Are they French?" "They are" = "Sont-ils français?" "Ils le sont"; "Are you a soldier?" "I am" = "Êtes-vous soldat?" "Je le suis." Compare § 55, a.

**64.** In English we sometimes use *we, you, or they* in an indefinite way, meaning *someone* or *people in general*; the word *people* itself frequently has the same sense. In French this idea is generally expressed by the pronoun 'on' (ò), which is used only in the nominative case, and

always requires the verb in the *third person singular*. Before a vowel sound 'on' is pronounced (òñ).

Ex.: *people say* = on dit ; *they spoke of you* = on a parlé de vous ; *you can't go in there* = on n'y entre pas ; *we don't always say what we think* = on ne dit pas toujours ce qu'on pense ; *folks get up early in the country* = on se lève de bonne heure à la campagne.

a. This same construction is very often employed to translate the English passive voice. See § 16, a. Ex.: *they are not heard* = on ne les entend pas ; *it will be given to you* = on vous le donnera ; *it has been taken from me* = on me l'a pris ; *we had been invited* = on nous avait invités ; *has he been allowed to come* = lui a-t-on permis de venir?

b. 'L'on' is often used for 'on' after 'et,' and, 'si,' if, 'ou,' or, 'où,' where, and occasionally after 'que,' that. Ex : *I spoke and was understood* = j'ai parlé et l'on m'a compris.

**65.** When the words *some* and *any* are unemphatic object-pronouns,<sup>1</sup> they are usually rendered in French by the pronoun 'en' (â); before a vowel sound 'en' is pronounced (ân): *I give him some* = je lui en donne (jlüi-â-dòn); *they haven't any* = ils n'en ont pas (il-nâ-nò-pâ); *do you want some* = en voulez-vous (â-vü-lé-vü)?<sup>2</sup>

Moreover, the English phrases *of it* and *of them*, when they are unemphatic, are generally to be translated by 'en': *you speak of it* = vous en parlez (vü-zâ-par-lé); *I have four of them* = j'en ai quatre (jâ-né-katr).

(1) When, in French, the direct object of a verb is used to specify a part of some thing or things previously mentioned, the

<sup>1</sup> When these words are used to modify a following noun or pronoun, they are adjectives [see §§ 109-111]; when they are used independently, they are pronouns: in *I have some money* the *some* is an adjective, but in *give me some* the *some* is a pronoun.

<sup>2</sup> It must be remembered that *none* is equivalent to *not any*, and *no more* to *not any more*. Ex.: *she had none* = elle n'en avait pas; *you shall have no more* = vous n'en aurez plus. Compare § 39, (2).

word 'en' must be used with this verb, even though *of it* or *of them* is not expressed in English. Ex.: "*Did you drink all that wine?*" "*No, I drank about half*" = "Avez-vous bu tout ce vin?" "Non, j'en ai bu à peu près la moitié"; "*Hasn't he any faults?*" "*He has a few*" = "N'a-t-il pas de défauts?" "Il en a quelques-uns."

a. It is especially to be noted that 'en' is required with a verb whose direct object is a word of number or quantity referring to things or persons just mentioned. Ex.: "*How many brothers have you?*" "*I have two*" = "Combien de frères avez-vous?" "J'en ai deux"; "*Has he any money?*" "*He has a great deal*" = "A-t-il de l'argent?" "Il en a beaucoup."

**66.** The adverbs 'en' (â) and 'y' (i) occupy the same places as conjunctive pronouns, and are occasionally used where we should employ in English a pronoun with a preposition: *I come from it* = j'en viens (jâ-vyè); *you are in it* = vous y êtes (vu-zi-èt). 'En' means *away, thence, from there*; 'y' means *there or thither*.

a. *There* is to be rendered by 'y' when it refers to a place already mentioned, has no emphasis, and cannot be accompanied by the act of pointing: *I have never been in Italy, but I intend to go there* = je n'ai jamais été en Italie, mais j'ai l'intention d'y aller. Otherwise *there* is 'là' (la). Compounds of 'là' are 'là-haut' (la-ó), *up there*, 'là-bas' (la-bâ), *down there or over there*, 'là-dedans' (lad-dâ), *in there*.

b. When, in French, a question contains an adverb or adverbial phrase denoting place, the verb used in the answer is regularly accompanied by 'en' or 'y.' See § 55. Ex.: "*Does he come from Paris?*" "*Yes, he does*" = "Vient-il de Paris?" "Oui, il en vient"; "*Is she in France?*" "*No, she isn't*" = "Est-elle en France?" "Non, elle n'y est pas"; "*Are they going to Rome?*" "*Yes, they are*" = "Vont-ils à Rome?" "Oui, ils y vont."

**67.** In French, as in English, unless the sentence is arranged in interrogative order [see § 37, B, (1) and § 37, a and b], a subject-pronoun regularly precedes its verb.

Nothing can stand between a French subject-pronoun and its verb, except 'ne,' 'en,' 'y,' or a conjunctive object-pronoun. See § 41, *c*. Ex.: *we sometimes speak* = nous parlons quelquefois (nu-par-lò-kèl-ke-fwa); *they often come* = ils viennent souvent (il-vyèn-su-vâ); *I have put it there* = je l'y ai mis (jli-é-mi); *he doesn't give it to me* = il ne me le donne pas (iln-mel-dòn-pâ). Notice that 'ne' follows the subject and precedes the object.

**68.** Conjunctive object-pronouns stand immediately before their verb—in compound tenses, before the auxiliary—no matter whether the sentence be affirmative or interrogative. Nothing can stand between the pronoun and the verb, except 'en,' 'y,' or another conjunctive object-pronoun.

Ex.: *it is hard to please him* = il est difficile de lui plaire; *can you see us* = pouvez-vous nous voir?<sup>1</sup> *she didn't want to buy them* = elle ne voulait pas les acheter;<sup>1</sup> *you must sell it to me* = il faut me le vendre; *you offer them to her* = tu les lui offres; *he has not told it to you* = il ne vous l'a pas dit; *don't give it to them* = ne le leur donne pas; *has she brought it to us* = nous l'a-t-elle apporté?

A. — But in the positive imperative<sup>2</sup> the pronoun stands after the verb, and is joined to it with a hyphen. In this case 'me' and 'te' are replaced by 'moi' (mwa) and 'toi' (twa). Compare § 46.

Ex.: *hide yourself* = cache-toi or cachez-vous; *send her to me* = envoyez-la-moi;<sup>3</sup> *tell it to him* = dis-le-lui; *let's go away* = allons-nous-en; *do it* = faites-le.

<sup>1</sup> The object of an infinitive dependent on 'pouvoir' or 'vouloir' is occasionally placed before this auxiliary.

<sup>2</sup> That is, the imperative used without any negation.

<sup>3</sup> Notice that no 'à' is required between 'envoyer,' *to send*, and an object-pronoun: 'envoyer' does not follow the rule about verbs of motion, stated in § 57, (1).

*a.* In the positive imperative 'm'en' and 't'en' are always used instead of 'moi-en' and 'toi-en': *give me some* = donnez m'en; *go away* = va-t'en.

*b.* When 'faire,' 'laisser,' 'entendre,' or 'voir' is used with a dependent infinitive, an object-pronoun belonging logically to the infinitive is joined to the main verb: *I have him read it* = je le lui fais lire; *he has let me see them* = il me les a laissé voir; *we have heard it said* = nous l'avons entendu dire; *you have seen her killed* = vous l'avez vu tuer. But if the infinitive is reflexive, it keeps its pronoun: *you have seen her kill herself* = vous l'avez vue se tuer. See § 16, *b*; § 18, *d, i*; § 61, *a*.

**69.** When a verb has two object-pronouns of different persons, the third person always stands nearest to the verb. See § 57, (2), (3).

Ex.: *he doesn't send it to you* = il ne te l'envoie pas; *give them to me* = donne-les-moi; *I have brought them to you* = je vous les ai apportés; *tell it to us* = dites-le-nous; *do not relate it to me* = ne me le racontez pas; *has she offered it to you* = vous l'a-t-elle offert?

A. — If both object-pronouns are of the third person, the direct object precedes the indirect: *I give them to her* = je les lui donne (jlè-lüi-dòn). The reflexive 'se,' however, precedes all other object-pronouns: *she was saying it to herself* = elle se le disait (èl-sel-di-zè). 'En' and 'y' follow all other forms: *go away* = allez-vous-en (a-lé-vu-zâ); see § 49, *b*.

Ex.: *tell it to him* = dis-le-lui; *don't offer it to them* = ne leur offrez pas; *has he sent her to them* = la leur a-t-il envoyée? *he can't afford it* = il ne peut pas se le payer; *she places herself there* = elle s'y met; *put yourself there* = mettez-vous-y; *I give him some* = je lui en donne; *lend them some* = prêtez-leur-en.

**70.** For some cases in which the disjunctive pronoun takes the place of the conjunctive form see § 74, (1), (2).



## Disjunctive Forms.

71. The disjunctive forms are given below:—

|                                   | SINGULAR.        | PLURAL.           |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>First Person :</i>             | <b>moi</b> (mwa) | <b>nous</b> (nu)  |
| <i>Second Person :</i>            | <b>toi</b> (twa) | <b>vous</b> (vu)  |
| <i>Third Person — Masculine :</i> | <b>lui</b> (lùi) | <b>eux</b> (ö)    |
| <i>Feminine :</i>                 | <b>elle</b> (èl) | <b>elles</b> (èl) |

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound ‘ nous,’ ‘ vous,’ ‘ eux,’ ‘ elles ’ are often pronounced (nuz), (vuz), (öz), (èlz); see § 6 and § 6, (1). For the difference between ‘ toi ’ and ‘ vous ’ see § 23.

72. The disjunctive *reflexive* pronouns are identical with the forms given above: *I am thinking of myself* = je pense à moi (je-pâ-sa-mwa); *he is working for himself* = il travaille pour lui (il-tra-vay-pur-lùi).

But in general statements, when the subject is indefinite, ‘ lui ’ is replaced by ‘ soi ’ (swa): *each one for himself* = chacun pour soi (cha-kë-pur-swa); *we mustn’t talk of ourselves* = on ne doit pas parler de soi (òn-dwa-pâ-par-léd-swa).

73. The disjunctive forms occupy, in general, the same positions as English personal pronouns.

74. We have seen that the disjunctive pronouns are used (A) after prepositions, (B) as predicate nominative, and (C) without a verb: *he is with me* = il est avec moi (i-lè-ta-vèk-mwa); *I am working for you* = je travaille pour toi (je-tra-vay-pur-twa); *it was he* = c’était lui (sé-tè-lùi); *it will be you* = ce sera vous (ses-ra-vu); *it is they* = ce sont eux (se-sò-tö) or ce sont elles (se-sò-tèl); *neither he nor she*

= ni lui ni elle (ni-lüi-ni-èl) ; *you and I* = vous et moi (vü-zé-mwa). They are used also, instead of the conjunctive forms, in the following cases :—

(1) In stating separately the different parts of a compound subject or object : *he and his brother have arrived* = lui et son frère sont arrivés ; *I know you and her* = je connais vous et elle. Often the compound subject or object, especially if it is of more than one person, is summed up by a conjunctive pronoun : *you and I know them* = vous et moi, nous les connaissons *or* nous les connaissons, vous et moi ; *you and they will not come* = vous ne viendrez pas, vous et eux *or* vous et eux, vous ne viendrez pas ; *she and I are here* = elle et moi, nous sommes ici, *or* nous sommes ici, elle et moi ; *do you see him and his friend* = les voyez-vous, lui et son ami *or* voyez-vous lui et son ami ?

(2) When the subject or object is at all emphatic. In this case the conjunctive form must be used also, except in the third person masculine, where it is sometimes omitted. Ex. : *you know me* = vous me connaissez, moi ; *you are good* = tu es bon, toi *or* toi, tu es bon ; *he hasn't come* = il n'est pas venu, lui *or* lui, n'est pas venu.

*a.* Stress is often supplemented, in English, by the use of a compound with the ending *self* or *selves*, which corresponds to French '-même' (mèèm) or '-mêmes' (mèèm) : *she told me so herself* = elle me l'a dit elle-même ; *we did it ourselves* = nous l'avons fait nous-mêmes ; *we mustn't always be thinking of ourselves* = il ne faut pas toujours penser à soi-même. Great care must be taken to distinguish the ordinary English reflexive pronoun in *-self*, *-selves* from this emphatic compound : if the word is accented, it must be rendered in French by the form with '-même' or '-mêmes' ; if it is unaccented, it must be translated by the simple reflexive pronoun. Ex. : *I wash myself* = je me lave moi-même, *I wash myself* = je me lave ; *they killed themselves* = ils se sont tués eux-mêmes, *they killed themselves* = ils se sont tués. Notice that when the English compound in *-self* or *-selves* is the direct object of a reflexive verb, the reflexive pronoun must be used in French, whether the form with '-même' or '-mêmes' be required or not.

*b.* In French a subject or object is often made prominent by the use of a construction like *it is I that . . .*, *it is you that . . .*, etc. Ex.: *he will never tell* = *it is not he that will tell* = *ce n'est pas lui qui le dira*; *you saw her* = *it is she that you saw* = *c'est elle que vous avez vue*; *I gave it to them* = *it is to them that I gave it* = *c'est à eux que je l'ai donné*. Notice that the relative is 'qui' (ки) when the English pronoun is subject, and 'que' (ке) when the English pronoun is object.

**75.** In speaking of things without life, the French avoid, as far as possible, the use of disjunctive personal pronouns; hence a phrase that consists of a preposition of place followed by a personal pronoun denoting an inanimate object is generally replaced by an adverb. For 'en' and 'y' see § 66 and § 66, *b.*

Ex.: *this is the table — there is nothing under it* = *voici la table — il n'y a rien dessous*; *there's a vase on it* = *il y a un vase dessus*; *what is there in it* = *qu'est-ce qu'il y a dedans?*

## 4. POSSESSIVES.

**76.** We have in modern colloquial English the following possessive pronouns and adjectives:—

|                            | ADJECTIVES. |              | PRONOUNS.    |               |
|----------------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| First Person :             | <i>my</i>   | <i>our</i>   | <i>mine</i>  | <i>ours</i>   |
| Second Person :            | <i>your</i> | <i>your</i>  | <i>yours</i> | <i>yours</i>  |
| Third Person — Masculine : | <i>his</i>  | <i>their</i> | <i>his</i>   | <i>theirs</i> |
| Feminine :                 | <i>her</i>  | <i>their</i> | <i>hers</i>  | <i>theirs</i> |
| Neuter :                   | <i>its</i>  | <i>their</i> | <i>its</i>   | <i>theirs</i> |

The *adjectives* must be carefully distinguished from the *pronouns*. It will be seen that *his* and *its* may be either pronouns or adjectives: they are adjectives when they modify a noun, as in *you have his pencil*; they are pronouns when they are used independently, as in *I have his but not hers*.

**77.** French possessives agree in gender and number with the thing possessed: *my brother* = **mon** frère (mò-frèèr), *my sister* = **ma** sœur (ma-sëèr), *my friends* = **mes** amis (mè-za-mi). **They do not agree in gender with the possessor**; so *his*, *her*, and *its* are all to be translated by the same word: *his age*, *her age*, *its age* = son âge (sò-nââj); *his youth*, *her youth*, *its youth* = sa jeunesse (sa-jë-nès); *his merits*, *her merits*, *its merits* = ses qualités (sè-ka-li-té).

**Possessive Adjectives.**

**78.** The French possessive adjectives are given below:—

|                        | SINGULAR.       |                | PLURAL.         |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
|                        | MASCULINE.      | FEMININE.      | BOTH GENDERS.   |
| <i>my</i> :            | <b>mon</b> (mò) | <b>ma</b> (ma) | <b>mes</b> (mè) |
| <i>your</i> :          | <b>ton</b> (tò) | <b>ta</b> (ta) | <b>tes</b> (tè) |
| <i>his, her, its</i> : | <b>son</b> (sò) | <b>sa</b> (sa) | <b>ses</b> (sè) |

|                |                     |                     |                    |
|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>our</i> :   | <b>notre</b> (nòtr) | <b>notre</b> (nòtr) | <b>nos</b> (nó)    |
| <i>your</i> :  | <b>votre</b> (vòtr) | <b>votre</b> (vòtr) | <b>vos</b> (vó)    |
| <i>their</i> : | <b>leur</b> (lër)   | <b>leur</b> (lër)   | <b>leurs</b> (lër) |

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound 'mon,' 'ton,' 'son,' 'mes,' 'tes,' 'ses,' 'nos,' 'vos,' 'leurs' are pronounced (mòn), (tòn), (sòn), (mèz), (tèz), (sèz), (nóz), (vóz), (lërz): *my cousin* = mon cousin (mò-KU-zè), *my friend* = mon ami (mò-na-mi).

*a.* 'Ton,' 'ta,' 'tes' are the forms corresponding to 'tu'; 'votre' and 'vos' correspond to 'vous.' See § 23. Ex.: *have you your hat* = as-tu ton chapeau *or* avez-vous votre chapeau ?

**79.** The masculine forms are used before a noun in the masculine singular, the feminine forms before a noun in the feminine singular, and the plural forms before any plural noun. There are no neuter nouns in French. Ex.: *your arm* = ton bras (tò-bra); *your hand* = ta main (ta-mè); *your fingers* = tes doigts (tè-dwa).

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound the feminine forms 'ma,' 'ta,' 'sa,' are changed to 'mon,' 'ton,' 'son' = *my Alice* = mon Alice (mò-na-lis); *your amiable aunt* = ton aimable tante (tò-nè-ma-ble-tâât); *his excellent wife* = son excellente femme (sò-nèk-sè-lât-fam).

*a.* When a possessive adjective modifies several nouns, it is generally expressed before every one of them; it must always be repeated if the nouns require different forms of the possessive: *my father and mother* = mon père et ma mère.

*b.* When addressing any one by a noun expressing relationship, the French use the possessive adjective: *good morning, father* = bon jour, mon père.

*c.* *Own* between a possessive adjective and a noun may be translated either by using the adjective 'propre' (pròpr), which occupies the same place as *own*, or by placing after the noun 'à' followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun corresponding in gender, number, and person with the possessor: *your own hands* = vos propres mains; *his own son* = son fils à lui.

**80.** When the thing possessed forms a part of the possessor, and is used as the direct object of a verb, the possessive adjective is generally replaced, in French, by an indirect object-pronoun and a definite article.

Ex. : *he took my hand* = il m'a pris la main ; *they will cut your throat* = ils te couperont la gorge ; *she has broken her arm* = elle s'est cassé le bras ; *the dog was biting his leg* = le chien lui mordait la jambe ; *we have cut our fingers* = nous nous sommes coupé les doigts ; *he will pull out your teeth* = il vous arrachera les dents ; *the carriage has run over their feet* = la voiture leur a écrasé les pieds.

a. The same construction is sometimes used when the thing possessed is not the direct object of a verb : *he stepped on my foot* = il m'a marché sur le pied.

b. A similar construction often serves to translate the English *one of my . . . , one of your . . . , etc.*, used as direct object of a verb : *the dentist extracted one of his teeth* = le dentiste lui arracha une dent.

c. When the possessor is the subject of the sentence, and no ambiguity is possible, the object-pronoun is regularly omitted : *I have lost my memory* = j'ai perdu la mémoire ; *he put his hand into his pocket* = il mit la main dans sa poche.

d. When the possessor is a thing, the object-pronoun is 'en' : *I like this country, but I don't like its inhabitants* = j'aime ce pays, mais je n'en aime pas les habitants.

### Possessive Pronouns.

**81.** The French possessive pronouns will be found below :—

#### SINGULAR.

|                         | MASCULINE.          | FEMININE.           |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>mine</i> :           | le mien (le-myè)    | la mienne (la-myèn) |
| <i>yours</i> :          | le tien (le-tyè)    | la tienne (la-tyèn) |
| <i>his, hers, its</i> : | le sien (le-syè)    | la sienne (la-syèn) |
| <i>ours</i> :           | le nôtre (le-nóótr) | la nôtre (la-nóótr) |
| <i>yours</i> :          | le vôtre (le-vóótr) | la vôtre (la-vóótr) |
| <i>theirs</i> :         | le leur (le-lëër)   | la leur (la-lëër)   |

## PLURAL.

|                         | MASCULINE.                   | FEMININE.                    |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>mine</i> :           | <b>les miens</b> (lè-myè)    | <b>les miennes</b> (lè-myèn) |
| <i>yours</i> :          | <b>les tiens</b> (lè-tyè)    | <b>les tiennes</b> (lè-tyèn) |
| <i>his, hers, its</i> : | <b>les siens</b> (lè-syè)    | <b>les siennes</b> (lè-syèn) |
| <i>ours</i> :           | <b>les nôtres</b> (lè-nóótr) | <b>les nôtres</b> (lè-nóótr) |
| <i>yours</i> :          | <b>les vôtres</b> (lè-vóótr) | <b>les vôtres</b> (lè-vóótr) |
| <i>theirs</i> :         | <b>les leurs</b> (lè-lëër)   | <b>les leurs</b> (lè-lëër)   |

The first part of the pronoun is simply the definite article, 'le,' 'la,' 'les.' When the preposition 'de' (de), *of* or *from*, or the preposition 'à' (a), *to* or *at*, immediately precedes 'le' or 'les,' the preposition and the article are contracted into one word: de + le = **du** (dü), de + les = **des** (dè); à + le = **au** (ó), à + les = **aux** (ó). 'La' remains unchanged.

Ex. : *of mine* [masc. sing.] = du mien, *of yours* [fem. sing.] = de la tienne, *of his* [fem. pl.] = des siennes; *to ours* [masc. sing.] = au nôtre, *to yours* [fem. sing.] = à la vôtre, *to theirs* [masc. pl.] = aux leurs.

a. 'Le tien,' 'la tienne,' 'les tiens,' 'les tiennes' are the forms corresponding to 'tu'; 'le vôtre,' 'la vôtre,' 'les vôtres' correspond to 'vous.' See § 23. Ex. : *you have yours* [masc. sing.] = tu as le tien or vous avez le vôtre.

**82.** These pronouns are masculine or feminine, singular or plural, according to the gender and number of the nouns they represent.

Ex. : *where are your brothers? here is mine* = où sont vos frères? voici le mien; *there are ours* = voilà les nôtres; *have you seen my sister? I have seen yours* = as-tu vu ma sœur? j'ai vu la tienne; *where are his* = où sont les siennes?

**83.** When the English verb *to be* with a possessive pronoun is equivalent to the verb *to belong to* with a personal pronoun, the French use 'être à' followed by a disjunctive object-pronoun.

Ex. : *it is mine* = *it belongs to me* = *c'est à moi* ; *the book is his* = *le livre est à lui* ; *this hat was hers* = *ce chapeau était à elle* ; *they will be ours* = *ils seront à nous*.

a. The same construction is used with nouns and interrogative pronouns : *whose is this house* = *à qui est cette maison?* *it is my uncle's* = *elle est à mon oncle* ; *those horses are Paul's* = *ces chevaux-là sont à Paul*.



## 5. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**84.** English relative pronouns often have different forms, according as they stand for persons or for things.

|             | PERSONS.                   | THINGS.                     |
|-------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Nominative: | <i>who</i> or <i>that</i>  | <i>which</i> or <i>that</i> |
| Possessive: | <i>whose</i>               | <i>whose</i>                |
| Objective:  | <i>whom</i> or <i>that</i> | <i>which</i> or <i>that</i> |

The relative *that* is always equivalent to *who*, *whom*, or *which*; so it need not be separately mentioned in the following paragraphs.

*a.* The relative *that* must not be confounded with the demonstrative pronoun,—as in *don't do that*,—the demonstrative adjective,—as in *give me that stick*,—nor the conjunction,—as in *he assured me that he would do it*. For the demonstratives see §§ 96–103. The conjunction *that* is nearly always 'que' (кe), which cannot be omitted as *that* often is in English; before a vowel sound the *e* of 'que' is replaced by an apostrophe.

*b.* The relative pronouns *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which* must be distinguished from the interrogative words of like form. The relative pronouns refer to an antecedent, and are used to begin a relative clause, as in *the man whom you see*; the interrogative words serve to introduce either a direct or an indirect question,<sup>1</sup> as in *whom do you see?* or *tell me whom you see*. For interrogative pronouns and adjectives see §§ 89–95.

**85.** The French relative pronouns are: **qui** (ki), **que** (ke), **quoi** (kwa), **dont** (dò), **lequel** (le-kèl). Their use will be explained below. Before a vowel sound the *e* of 'que' is always replaced by an apostrophe, and 'dont' is regu-

<sup>1</sup> An *indirect question* is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word and dependent on a verb of asking, telling, perceiving, or learning. The French adverbs 'voici' and 'voilà' [see § 63, *b*] are often equivalent to a verb of telling.

larly pronounced (dòt): *the ticket that has been given me* = le billet qu'on m'a donné (le-bi-yè-kò-ma-dò-né); *the play that he is speaking of* = la pièce dont il parle (la-pyès-dò-til-parl). The *i* of 'qui' is never lost.

(1) 'Lequel' changes its form according to the gender and number of the word it represents: —

|                    | SINGULAR.                | PLURAL.                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Masculine</i> : | <b>lequel</b> (le-kèl)   | <b>lesquels</b> (lè-kèl)   |
| <i>Feminine</i> :  | <b>laquelle</b> (la-kèl) | <b>lesquelles</b> (lè-kèl) |

The first part of the word is always the definite article, 'le,' 'la,' 'les.' When 'lequel,' 'lesquels,' or 'lesquelles' is preceded by 'de,' *of* or *from*, or by 'à,' *to* or *at*, the preposition and the pronoun are combined: —

|  |  |
|--|--|
| de + lequel = <b>duquel</b> (dü-kèl)         | à + lequel = <b>auquel</b> (ó-kèl)         |
| de + lesquels = <b>desquels</b> (dè-kèl)     | à + lesquels = <b>auxquels</b> (ó-kèl)     |
| de + lesquelles = <b>desquelles</b> (dè-kèl) | à + lesquelles = <b>auxquelles</b> (ó-kèl) |

'Laquelle' remains unchanged. Compare § 81.

*a.* In English the relative pronoun is sometimes left out; in French it is never omitted: *there is the gentleman [whom] we saw yesterday* = voilà le monsieur que nous avons vu hier; *it's the man [that] we were speaking of* = c'est l'homme dont nous parlions; *is it the friend [that] you were going to write to* = est-ce l'ami à qui vous alliez écrire?

*b.* An English relative clause sometimes ends with a preposition; in French the preposition must precede the pronoun it governs: *here is the lady [that] she dined with* = voici la dame avec qui elle a dîné; *where is the table [that] he put it on* = où est la table sur laquelle il l'a posé?

**86.** In most cases the French relative pronouns do not distinguish persons from things. On the other hand, a French relative pronoun that is the object of a verb generally has a different form from one that is the object of a preposition.

|                    | PERSONS.            | THINGS.                |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| NOMINATIVE :       | <i>who</i> = qui    | <i>which</i> = qui     |
| POSSESSIVE :       | <i>whose</i> = dont | <i>whose</i> = dont    |
| OBJECT — OF VERB : | <i>whom</i> = que   | <i>which</i> = que     |
| OF PREPOSITION :   | <i>whom</i> = qui   | <i>which</i> = lequell |

Relative pronouns have the gender and number of the words they represent: *the men who have come* = les hommes qui sont venus (lè-zòm-ki-sòv-nü); *the woman who has come* = la femme qui est venue (la-fam-ki-èv-nü); *the cows that I have bought* = les vaches que j'ai achetées (lè-vach-ke-jé-ach-té). See § 18, *c, d*. The nominative 'qui' is of the same person as its antecedent: *you who speak* = vous qui parlez (vu-ki-par-lé); *it is I that did it* = c'est moi qui l'ai fait (sè-mwa-ki-lé-fè).

(1) 'Dont' is generally used to translate not only *whose* but also *of whom* and *of which*. Ex.: *the ball you were speaking of* = *the ball of which you were speaking* = le bal dont vous parliez. After prepositions, however, 'dont' is always replaced by 'de' with 'lequel': *the children to whose father I have written* = *the children to the father of whom I have written* = les enfants au père desquels j'ai écrit.

(2) Since 'lequel' has special forms for the different numbers and genders, it is occasionally used, to avoid ambiguity, instead of the nominative 'qui' and the objective 'que': *the doctor's wife, whom you know, is here* = la femme du médecin, laquelle vous connaissez, est ici. Moreover, 'lequel' often takes the place of 'qui' after prepositions: *the children for whom he is working* = les enfants pour lesquels il travaille.

*a.* French 'dont,' like English *whose*, stands at the beginning of the relative clause. But *whose* must be immediately followed by the name of the thing possessed, without any article; whereas after 'dont' the name of the thing possessed requires the definite article or some other modifier, and occupies the position it would have if no relative pronoun were used. Ex.: *a little boy whose father I know* = un petit garçon dont je connais le père.

b. English *which* or *that*, governed by a preposition, and referring to an indefinite antecedent, such as *nothing*, *something*, *everything*, or a whole sentence or idea, is translated by 'quoui': *I have nothing that I can count upon* = je n'ai rien sur quoui je puisse compter; *I gave him a dollar, whereupon [or upon which] he left me* = je lui donnai un dollar, sur quoui il me quitta. 'De quoui' generally means *wherewith*: *he has nothing to live on* = *he has not wherewith to live* = il n'a pas de quoui vivre.

c. English *at which*, *in which*, *into which* are often rendered by French 'où' (u), *where*: *the village I live in* = *the village in which I live* = le village où je demeure. So *from which* or *out of which* frequently corresponds to 'd'où' (du), *whence*: *the house he came out of* = *the house out of which he came* = la maison d'où il est sorti.

d. 'Qui' is sometimes used for 'celui qui,' meaning *he who* or *him who*. Ex.: *silence means consent* = *he who says nothing consents* = qui ne dit rien consent.

e. English *which*, used as a relative *adjective*, corresponds to 'lequel': *I owe you fifty francs, which sum I shall send you to-morrow* = je vous dois cinquante francs, laquelle somme je vous enverrai demain.

**87.** The English relative pronoun *what* really combines a demonstrative pronoun with a relative, and stands for *that which*. Each part may be either nominative or objective. When the *which* is

|                          |                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| subject of a verb,       | <i>what</i> = ce qui (ski)            |
| object of a verb,        | <i>what</i> = ce que (ske)            |
| object of a preposition, | <i>what</i> = ce . . . quoui (se kwa) |

When, however, the *which* is the object of the preposition *of*, we must nearly always translate *what* by 'ce dont' (se-dò).

Ex.: *what isn't clear isn't French* = *that which isn't clear isn't French* = ce qui n'est pas clair n'est pas français; *what you say isn't clear* = *that which you say isn't clear* = ce que vous dites n'est pas clair; *I do what suits me* = *I do that which suits me* = je fais ce qui me plaît; *he does what I tell him* = *he does that*

**which I tell him** = il fait ce que je lui dis; *you will not find what you are looking forward to* = you will not find that to which you are looking forward = vous ne trouverez pas ce à quoi vous attendez; *we haven't what you speak of* = we haven't that of which you speak = nous n'avons pas ce dont vous parlez.

*a.* Which representing a whole sentence or idea, when used as subject or as direct object of a verb, is translated by 'ce qui' or 'ce que': *he spoke very loud, which made us smile* = il parla très haut, ce qui nous fit sourire. *Everything that* or *all that* [singular] is 'tout ce qui' (tus-ki) or 'tout ce que' (tus-ke), according as *that* is nominative or objective: *everything that is here* = tout ce qui est ici; *all that exists* = tout ce qui existe; *everything [that] you see* = tout ce que vous voyez; *all [that] I have* = tout ce que j'ai. For *everything that* or *all that* with a preposition see § 86, *b.*

*b.* In the parenthetical clause 'qui plus est' (ki-plü-zè), *what's more*, 'qui' takes the place of 'ce qui.'

**88.** For *what* in indirect questions see § 91, § 95, and § 95, *a, b, c.*

## 6. INTERROGATIVES.

**89.** The English interrogative pronouns and adjectives are *who, whose, whom, what, which*. They must be carefully distinguished from the relative pronouns: see § 84, *b*. *What* and *which* are adjectives when they modify a noun, as in *what book are you reading?* or *which color do you prefer?* They are pronouns when they are used independently, as in *what are you reading?* or *which do you prefer?*

*a.* English questions often end with a preposition; in French the preposition must precede the word or phrase it modifies: *whom are you speaking to* = à qui parlez-vous? *what is he complaining of* = de quoi se plaint-il? *which rooms do they sleep in* = dans quelles chambres couchent-ils? Compare § 85, *b*.

**90.** The French interrogative pronouns and adjectives are: **qui** (ki), **que** (ke), **quoi** (kwa), **qu'est-ce qui** (kès-ki), **qu'est-ce que** (kès-ke), **qui est-ce qui** (kyès-ki), **qui est-ce que** (kyès-ke), **lequel** (le-kèl), **quel** (kèl).

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound the *e* of 'que' and of all forms ending in 'que' is replaced by an apostrophe: *what has she seen* = qu'est-ce qu'elle a vu (kès-kè-la-vü)? The *i* of 'qui' is never dropped.

(1) 'Lequel' has the same forms as the relative 'lequel,' and is combined with 'de' and 'à' in the same way. See § 85, (1).

(2) The adjective 'quel' changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it modifies:—

|                    | SINGULAR.           | PLURAL.              |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Masculine</i> : | <b>quel</b> (kèl)   | <b>quels</b> (kèl)   |
| <i>Feminine</i> :  | <b>quelle</b> (kèl) | <b>quelles</b> (kèl) |

Before a vowel sound 'quels' and 'quelles' are pronounced (kèlz): *which orders* = quels ordres (kèl-zòrdr)?

### Interrogative Adjectives.

**91.** The interrogative adjectives *which* and *what* are both translated 'quel.' See § 90, (2).

Ex. : *what time is it* = quelle heure est-il? *what is your opinion* = quel est votre avis? *which books is he speaking of* = de quels livres parle-t-il? *I know which windows she has shut* = je sais quelles fenêtres elle a fermées.

*a.* English *what* and *what a*, used in exclamations, are rendered by 'quel' without any article: *what fine dogs* = quels beaux chiens! *what a pity* = quel dommage!

*b.* 'Quel' with 'que,' followed by a verb in the subjunctive, corresponds to the English adjective *whatever*. Ex. : *whatever my future may be* = quel que soit mon avenir. *Whatever* is, however, translated in other ways, which must be learned by observation.

### Interrogative Pronouns.

**92.** *Which one* or *which*, used as a pronoun, is 'lequel,' which changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it represents. See § 90, (1).

Ex. : *here are two wrestlers — which is the stronger* = voici deux lutteurs — lequel est le plus fort? *three of his sisters have come — do you know which ones* = trois de ses sœurs sont venues — savez-vous lesquelles?

**93.** *Whose* is 'à qui' (a-ki): *whose is it* = à qui est-ce (a-ki-ès)? If the thing possessed is represented in the sentence only by a personal pronoun, the construction is the same in French and in English: *I know whose they were* = je sais à qui ils étaient (je-sé-a-ki-il-zé-tè). But if the thing possessed is represented by anything but a personal pronoun, the sentence must be arranged in this

order: (1) 'à qui'; (2) some part of 'être'; (3) the thing possessed, used as subject of 'être' or of its auxiliary.

Ex.: *do you know whose that is* = *do you know whose is that* = *savez-vous à qui est cela?* *whose ring is this* = *whose is this ring* = *à qui est cette bague?* *tell him whose money it was* = *tell him whose was the money* = *dites-lui à qui était l'argent*; *whose pencils have you taken* = *whose are the pencils that you have taken* = *à qui sont les crayons que vous avez pris?*

**94.** The other interrogative pronouns used of persons are:—

- (1) SUBJECT OF VERB: *who* = *qui or qui est-ce qui*  
 (2) PREDICATE NOMINATIVE: *who* = *qui or qui est-ce que*  
 (3) OBJECT OF VERB: *whom* = *qui or qui est-ce que*  
 (4) OBJECT OF PREPOSITION: *whom* = *qui*

'**Qui**' is used both in direct and in indirect discourse; '**qui est-ce qui**' and '**qui est-ce que**' occur only in *direct* questions. After '**qui est-ce que**' there is no inversion of subject and verb.

Ex. (1): *who is coming* = *qui vient or qui est-ce qui vient?*  
*I'll tell you who did it* = *je vous dirai qui l'a fait.*

Ex. (2): *who is it* = *qui est-ce or qui est-ce que c'est?* *he asked me who it was* = *il m'a demandé qui c'était.*

Ex. (3): *whom are they conducting* = *qui conduisent-ils or qui est-ce qu'ils conduisent?* *you know whom I have seen* = *vous savez qui j'ai vu.*

Ex. (4): *whom are these flowers for* = *pour qui sont ces fleurs?* *tell us whom you are speaking to* = *dites-nous à qui vous parlez.*

*a.* Notice that the *interrogative* pronoun *whom*, used as object of a verb, is 'qui,' while the *relative* is 'que.' See § 86.

*b.* *Who* used without any grammatical construction is 'qui.' Ex.: *who = qui? you know who = vous savez qui.*



**95.** The other interrogative pronouns used of things are:—

- (1) SUBJECT OF VERB: *what* = *qu'est-ce qui* or *ce qui*  
 (2) PREDICATE NOMINATIVE: *what* = *que* or *qu'est-ce que* or *ce que*  
 (3) OBJECT OF VERB: *what* = *que* or *qu'est-ce que* or *ce que*  
 (4) OBJECT OF PREPOSITION: *what* = *quoi*

'**Quoi**' occurs both in direct and in indirect discourse; '**qu'est-ce qui**,' '**que**,' and '**qu'est-ce que**' are used only in *direct*, and '**ce qui**,' '**ce que**' only in *indirect* questions. After '**qu'est-ce que**' there is no inversion of subject and verb.

Ex. (1): *what is happening* = **qu'est-ce qui** arrive? *ask him what is going on* = demandez-lui **ce qui** se fait.

Ex. (2): *what is it* = **qu'est-ce** or **qu'est-ce que** c'est? *what would life be* = **que** serait la vie? *she told him what it was* = elle lui dit **ce que** c'était.

Ex. (3): *what do you want* = **que** voulez-vous or **qu'est-ce que** vous voulez? *what to do* = **que** faire? *I wonder what they have found* = je voudrais bien savoir **ce qu'ils** ont trouvé.

Ex. (4): *what are you thinking of* = à **quoi** pensez-vous? *people know what I am working on* = on sait de **quoi** je m'occupe.

a. When *what* is the object of an infinitive, '**que**,' and not '**ce que**,' must be used in indirect questions: *I didn't know what to say* = je ne savais **que** dire.

b. After '*voilà*,' *that is*, '**qui**' often takes the place of '**ce qui**' in indirect questions: *that's hard* or *that's what's hard* = *voilà qui* est difficile.

c. In colloquial French '**qu'est-ce que**' is sometimes lengthened to '**qu'est-ce que c'est que**': *what are you doing there* = **qu'est-ce que c'est que** vous faites là?

d. In *direct* questions the pronoun *what* with *is* or *are*, followed by a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, is generally translated by '**qu'est-ce que**' or '**qu'est-ce que c'est que**': *what's that* = **qu'est-ce que c'est que** cela? *what are the three unities* = **qu'est-ce**

que les trois unités? *what is death* = qu'est-ce que la mort *or* qu'est-ce que c'est que la mort? We find also '**qu'est-ce que c'était que**' for *what was* or *what were*.

*e.* In *indirect* questions the pronoun *what* with *is* or *are*, followed by a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, is generally translated by '**ce que c'est que**': *tell me what electricity is* = dites-moi ce que c'est que l'électricité; *do you know what crocodiles are* = savez-vous ce que c'est que les crocodiles? We find also '**ce que c'était que**' for *what was* or *what were*.

*f.* '**Qui**' or '**quoi**' with '**que**,' followed by a verb in the subjunctive, corresponds to *whoever* or the pronoun *whatever*. Ex.: *whatever you do* = quoi que vous fassiez; *whoever it may be* or *anyone at all* = qui que ce soit. *Whoever* and *whatever* are translated in other ways, which must be learned by observation.

*g.* *What* used without any grammatical construction is '**quoi**.' Ex.: *what* = quoi! *what [is] more beautiful than that* = quoi de plus beau que cela! *I don't know what* = je ne sais quoi.

*h.* '**Que de**,' followed by a noun, is used in exclamations with the meaning *how much*. Ex.: *how much noise* = que de bruit!

## 7. DEMONSTRATIVES.

**96.** Our English demonstratives are *this, that, these, those, this one, that one, the one, the ones, the former, the latter, the same*. To these may be added *he, him, she, her, they, them*, used as the antecedent of a relative clause.

*a.* *This, that, these, those, former, latter, and same* may be either adjectives or pronouns: they are adjectives when they modify a noun, as in *see this boat, it's the same yacht*; they are pronouns when they are used independently, as in *look at this, is it the same?*

### Demonstrative Adjectives.

**97.** *This* and *that* are both 'ce,' which changes its form according to the gender of the noun it modifies. *These* and *those* are 'ces.'

| SINGULAR.                              | PLURAL.                           |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Masculine: ce (se) or cet (sèt)</i> | <i>ces (sè, before vowel sèz)</i> |
| <i>Feminine: cette (sèt)</i>           | <i>ces (sè, before vowel sèz)</i> |

The form 'ce' is used before a word beginning with a consonant sound or "aspirate *h*"; 'cet' is used before a word beginning with a vowel sound: *this wine* = *ce vin (se-vè)*; *this excellent wine* = *cet excellent vin (sè-tèk-sè-lâ-vè)*; *that man* = *cet homme (sè-tòm)*; *that owl* = *ce hibou (se-i-bu)*.<sup>1</sup>

**98.** If the demonstrative adjective is emphatic, or if *this* is contrasted with *that*, an adverbial suffix is added to the noun; the suffixes are '-ci' (*si*), *here*, and '-là' (*la*), *there*: —

|               |   |                                     |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>this</i> = | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{MASC. } ce \dots -ci \text{ or } cet \dots -ci \\ \text{FEM. } cette \dots -ci \end{array} \right.$ | <i>these</i> = <i>ces</i> . . . -ci |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|

---

<sup>1</sup> The *h* of 'hibou' is "aspirate"; that of 'homme' is not. See § 5, *a*.

*that* =  $\begin{cases} \text{MASC. } ce \dots -là \text{ or } cet \dots -là \\ \text{FEM. } cette \dots -là \end{cases}$       *those* = ces . . . -là

Ex.: *this street is the longest, but those two avenues are wider* = *cette rue-ci est la plus longue, mais ces deux avenues-là sont plus larges.*

a. The adjectives *former* and *latter*, when they are contrasted, sometimes correspond respectively to 'ce . . . -là' and 'ce . . . -ci'; but they are oftener translated by 'premier' (pre-myé), *first*, and 'second' (sgd), *second*. See § 128, (1), (3).

b. The adjective corresponding to *same* is 'même' (mèm), plural 'mêmes' (mèm or mèmz): *at the same moment* = au même moment; *the same kings* = les mêmes rois. The adverb 'même' means *even*; but when it stands immediately after a noun or pronoun, it is generally to be translated either by *very* or by a compound of *self*. Ex.: *even the king* = même le roi; *at the very moment* = au moment même; *the king himself* = le roi même.

### Demonstrative Pronouns.

99. *This* and *that* may be either **definite** or **indefinite**: they are *definite* when they refer to some particular noun that is expressed or implied in a previous part of the discourse; they are *indefinite* when they represent something that has not yet been named, or a whole sentence or idea. In the example *which of the pictures do you like better, this or that?* the words *this* and *that* are definite; in *this is my house* and *that's very true* the words *this* and *that* are indefinite.

a. *These, those, this one, that one, the one, the ones, the former, the latter, the same* are nearly always definite.

b. *These* and *those*, used with the verb *to be*, often serve merely to anticipate the subject or to call attention to it, as in *these are my jewels* or *those are the men we are looking for*; they are then translated like indefinite *this* and *that*. See § 103, (2), (3).

c. *Those*, meaning *those persons*, followed by a relative clause, is equivalent to *they* or *them*, and is translated by 'ceux' or 'celles.' Ex.: *those who eat must work* = *they who eat must work*. See § 101.

**100.** The definite pronouns *the one, the ones* are translated by 'celui,' which changes its form according to the number and gender of the noun it represents:—

|             | SINGULAR.             | PLURAL.             |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Masculine : | <b>celui</b> (se-lüi) | <b>ceux</b> (sö)    |
| Feminine :  | <b>celle</b> (sèl)    | <b>celles</b> (sèl) |

Ex. : *this little boy is the one that you wanted to see* = ce petit garçon-ci est celui que vous avez voulu voir ; *those little girls are the ones that we met yesterday* = ces petites filles-là sont celles que nous avons rencontrées hier ; *which gown do you prefer, the woollen or the silk one* [= *the one of wool or the one of silk*] = quelle robe préférez-vous, celle de laine ou celle de soie ? *which horses are finer, my father's or my uncle's* [= *the ones of my father or the ones of my uncle*] = quels chevaux sont les plus beaux, ceux de mon père ou ceux de mon oncle ?

a. 'Celui' in this sense is used only before a relative clause or a limiting prepositional phrase.

b. *Those* before a relative clause or a limiting prepositional phrase is generally equivalent to *the ones*, and is then translated by the proper form of 'celui': *I have those that you gave me* = j'ai ceux [or celles] que vous m'avez donnés [or données].

c. Definite *the one, the ones*, when contrasted with *the other, the others*, are translated by 'l'un' (l'ë), 'les uns' (lè-zë), feminine 'l'une' (lün), 'les unes' (lè-zün).

d. *The same*, meaning *the same one*, is 'le même,' which changes its form according to the number and gender of the noun it represents: singular, *masc.* le même (le-mèèm), *fem.* la même (la-mèèm) ; plural, *masc. and fem.* les mêmes (lè-mèèm).

e. *One or ones* after an adjective is not to be translated, unless the adjective is one that must be rendered in French by a prepositional phrase [see § 114, d, and § 129, c], and is immediately preceded by the definite article: *the good one and the bad ones* = le bon et les mauvais ; *the little one* [fem.] = la petite ; *I have a wooden one* = j'en ai un en bois ; *the two silver ones* = les deux en argent ; but *I like the cotton one* [fem.] = j'aime celle de coton.

f. For *not one* see § 39, (2).

**101.** *He, him, she, her, they, them,* — and *those* meaning *they* or *them*, — followed by a relative clause, are nearly always translated by this same pronoun ‘celui.’

Ex. : *he who is contented is happy* = celui qui est content est heureux ; *I speak of her whose death we mourn* = je parle de celle dont nous pleurons la mort ; *they who live shall see* = ceux qui vivront verront ; *we love those who love us* = nous aimons ceux qui nous aiment.

a. For the use of ‘qui’ instead of ‘celui qui’ see § 86, *d*.

**102.** The definite pronouns *this, these, this one,* and *the latter* are translated by ‘celui-ci’ ; the definite pronouns *that, those, that one* and *the former,* by ‘celui-là.’

Ex. : *here are ten bracelets — these are [of] gold, and those are [of] silver* = voici dix bracelets — ceux-ci sont en or, et ceux-là sont en argent ; *she has two watches — this one is prettier than that one* = elle a deux montres — celle-ci est plus jolie que celle-là ; *I am speaking of John and not of Paul — I don't know the latter, but the former is my friend* = je parle de Jean et non pas de Paul — je ne connais pas celui-ci, mais celui-là est mon ami.

**103.** Indefinite *this* and *that* generally correspond respectively to ‘ceci’ (se-si) and ‘cela’ (sla).<sup>1</sup>

Ex. : *I like this better than that* = j'aime mieux ceci que cela ; *this is true* = ceci est vrai ; *don't do that* = ne faites pas cela ; *what's that* = qu'est-ce que c'est que cela ?

A. — When, however, indefinite *this* and *that* are used with the verb *to be*, they are often to be translated by ‘ce’ (se) or by the demonstrative adverbs ‘voici’ (vwa-si) and ‘voilà’ (vwa-la) : —

---

<sup>1</sup> In colloquial French ‘cela’ is often shortened to ‘ça’ (sa) : *that will be all right* = ça ira.

(1) Unemphatic *that*, used with the verb *to be* followed by an adjective, is usually 'ce': *that's so* = c'est vrai; *that will be fine* = ce sera beau.

(2) Unemphatic *this* and *that*, used with the verb *to be* followed by a noun or a pronoun, correspond to 'ce': *that was he* = c'était lui; *that's his father* = c'est son père; *is this his sister* = est-ce sa sœur? Similarly: *these are my children* = ce sont mes enfants; *are those your cousins* = sont-ce vos cousins?

(3) But *this is*, *these are*, and *that is*, *those are*, followed by a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, and used in introducing or pointing out persons or things, are nearly always translated respectively by 'voici' and 'voilà' [see § 63, *b*]: *this is her aunt* = voici sa tante; *these are my relatives* = voici mes parents; *that's ours* = voilà le nôtre; *those are the ones you have bought* = voilà ceux que vous avez achetés.

a. For 'ce' meaning *it* see § 63 and § 63, A, B.

b. For 'ce' used as antecedent to a relative clause see § 87 and § 95.

c. 'Ce' is often used in French to repeat the subject before the verb 'être' followed by a predicate nominative in the form of a noun, a pronoun, or a clause: *time is money* = le temps, c'est de l'argent; *I am the state* = l'état, c'est moi. This repetition is particularly common when the subject is long: *what is of consequence to man is to fulfil his duties* = ce qui importe à l'homme, c'est de remplir ses devoirs.

d. Indefinite *the one . . . the other* is 'ceci' . . . 'cela.'

e. Indefinite *the former . . . the latter* is 'cela' . . . 'ceci.'

f. Indefinite *the same* is 'la même chose' (la-mêm-chóóž). *All the same*, meaning *nevertheless*, is 'tout de même' (tud-mèèm).

## 8. ARTICLES.

**104.** In English we have a definite article, *the*, and an indefinite article, *a* or *an*; in French the definite article is 'le,' and the indefinite is 'un.' The definite article occurs much oftener in French than in English, but the use of the indefinite article is nearly the same in the two languages.

## DEFINITE ARTICLE.

**105.** 'Le' changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it modifies:—

| SINGULAR.                  | PLURAL.         |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Masculine</i> : le (le) | <b>les</b> (lè) |
| <i>Feminine</i> : la (la)  | <b>les</b> (lè) |

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound the *e* of 'le' and the *a* of 'la' are replaced by an apostrophe, and 'les' is pronounced (lèz): *the son* = le fils (le-fis), *the excellent father* = l'excellent père (lèk-sè-lâ-pèèr), *the man* = l'homme (lòm), *the hero* = le héros (le-é-ró)<sup>1</sup>; *the daughter* = la fille (la-fiiy), *the wife* = l'épouse (lé-puuz), *the happy mother* = l'heureuse mère (lè-röz-mèèr), *the hedge* = la haie (la-è)<sup>1</sup>; *the little children* = les petits enfants (lèp-ti-zâ-fâ), *the children* = les enfants (lè-zâ-fâ).

*a.* In English, when a definite article modifies several consecutive nouns, it is often expressed before the first and omitted before the others; in French it is inserted before every one: *the father, mother, and children* = le père, la mère, et les enfants.

*b.* The use of the article for the possessive has been described in § 80 and § 80, *a, b, c, d.* Ex.: *she raised her hand* = elle leva la

<sup>1</sup> 'Héros' and 'haie' have "aspirate *h*." See § 5, *a.*



main; *I have a pain in my head* = j'ai mal à la tête; *he came with his umbrella under his arm* = il arriva, le parapluie sous le bras.

**106.** When 'le' or 'les' is preceded by 'de,' *of* or *from*, or 'à,' *to* or *at*, the preposition and the article are contracted into one word. The other forms of the article remain unchanged.

|                  | SINGULAR. |                              | PLURAL.                    |
|------------------|-----------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Masculine</i> | {         | de + le = <b>du</b> (dü)     | de + les = <b>des</b> (dè) |
|                  |           | de + l' = <b>de l'</b> (del) |                            |
| <i>Feminine</i>  | {         | de + la = <b>de la</b> (dla) | de + les = <b>des</b> (dè) |
|                  |           | de + l' = <b>de l'</b> (del) |                            |

|                  | SINGULAR. |                             | PLURAL.                  |
|------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Masculine</i> | {         | à + le = <b>au</b> (ó)      | à + les = <b>aux</b> (ó) |
|                  |           | à + l' = <b>à l'</b> (al)   |                          |
| <i>Feminine</i>  | {         | à + la = <b>à la</b> (a-la) | à + les = <b>aux</b> (ó) |
|                  |           | à + l' = <b>à l'</b> (al)   |                          |

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound 'des' and 'aux' are pronounced (dèz) and (óz).

Ex. : *of the son* = du fils, *to the father* = au père, *of the man* = de l'homme, *to the child* = à l'enfant, *of the hero* = du héros; *of the daughter* = de la fille, *to the mother* = à la mère, *of the wife* = de l'épouse, *to the hedge* = à la haie; *of the cousins* = des cousins, *to the aunts* = aux tantes, *of the uncles* = des oncles, *to the friends* = aux amis.

a. It is only the *article* 'le' or 'les' that combines with the preposition; the *personal pronoun* remains unchanged: *I want to see it* = j'ai envie de le voir.

### *The.*

**107.** In general, whenever *the* occurs in English, the definite article must be used in French.

a. In English we often insert *the* between *Book*, *Chapter*, or the name of a ruler, and a following numeral, which is then always an

ordinal; in such cases the French omit the article and almost invariably use the cardinal numeral; *Book the Third* = Livre trois; *Henry the Fourth* = Henri quatre. But *the First* after the name of a ruler is 'premier' (pre-myé), feminine 'première' (pre-myèr): *Napoleon the First* = Napoléon premier.

b. Before a noun placed in apposition to a preceding noun or pronoun, about which it tells something that the reader or hearer is supposed not to know, we often use the definite article in English; but the French regularly leave it out: *they invited Mr. H., the author of several novels* = on invita Monsieur H., auteur de plusieurs romans; *we are reading the story of Ajax, the son of Telamon* = nous lisons l'histoire d'Ajax, fils de Télamon; *I saw Albert, the king of Saxony* = j'ai vu Albert, roi de Saxe. Compare § 113, (2).

c. *The more . . . the more . . .* is 'plus' . . . 'plus' . . . (plü plü); *the less . . . the less . . .* is 'moins' . . . 'moins' . . . (mwè mwè): *the more I see you, the more I love you* = plus je vous vois, plus je vous aime.

**108.** In the following six cases the definite article is required in French, though not needed in English: —

(1) Before an abstract or collective noun or one used to denote all of the thing or class that it names: *vice is odious* = le vice est odieux, *man is mortal* = l'homme est mortel, *I like coffee* = j'aime le café, *children like to play* = les enfants aiment à jouer, *dogs are more faithful than cats* = les chiens sont plus fidèles que les chats.

(2) Before names of continents, countries, provinces, states, mountains, streets, squares, and parks; except after the preposition 'en' (à), meaning *in* or *to*:<sup>1</sup> *North America* = l'Amérique du nord, *through Massachusetts* = à travers le Massachusetts, *Mont Blanc* = le Mont-Blanc, *Richelieu St.* = la rue Richelieu, *Vendôme Square* = la place Vendôme, *Central Park* = le parc Central; but *in Spain* = en Espagne, *to Switzerland* = en Suisse.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'En' is used with these meanings before the unmodified names of continents, countries, and provinces, provided these names are feminine.

<sup>2</sup> In certain cases the article is often omitted after 'de': *the King of Prussia* = le roi de Prusse.

(3) Before a title followed by a proper noun; unless the title is *Mr.* = 'Monsieur' (me-syö), *Mrs.* = 'Madame' (ma-dam), *Miss* = 'Mademoiselle' (mad-mwa-zèl), or the old-fashioned *Master* = 'Maître' (mèètr): *Count Kostia* = le comte Kostia, *Prince Zilah* = le prince Zilah, *King Humbert* = le roi Humbert, *General Boulanger* = le général Boulanger;<sup>1</sup> but *Mr. Carnot* = Monsieur Carnot, *Mrs. Adam* = Madame Adam.

(4) Before a proper noun modified by an adjective: *little Fadette* = la petite Fadette, *great Corneille* = le grand Corneille.

(5) Before an adjective of nationality used as the name of a language; except after the preposition 'en' (*à*), *in*, *into*, or the verb 'parler' (par-lé), *to speak*: *I know English* = je sais l'anglais, *he is studying German* = il étudie l'allemand; but *she wrote in Italian* = elle écrivit en italien, *speak French* = parlez français. But the article is sometimes used after 'parler.'

(6) Before the names of the days of the week; unless *next* or *last* is expressed or understood: *he comes Fridays* = il vient les vendredis, *people don't work on Sunday* = on ne travaille pas le dimanche, *Monday talks* = causeries du lundi; but *I'll see you [next] Saturday* = je vous verrai samedi, *it rained [last] Wednesday and Thursday* = il a plu mercredi et jeudi.

a. In the above cases the article — unless required in English — is not employed in French when the noun in question is used for direct address or is modified by a possessive, interrogative, or demonstrative adjective or an adjective of number or quantity<sup>2</sup>: *this vice* = ce vice; *O France* = ô France! *yes, captain* = oui, mon capitaine; *his little Paul* = son petit Paul; *she doesn't know much English* = elle ne sait pas beaucoup d'anglais; *it has rained five successive Thursdays* = il a plu cinq jeudis de suite.

b. In a list or rapid enumeration, where several nouns are used in succession, the article is sometimes omitted in French, as in English: *liberty, equality, fraternity* = liberté, égalité, fraternité.

<sup>1</sup> In direct address 'monsieur,' 'madame,' or 'mademoiselle' is prefixed to the title: *good morning, Duke* = bon jour, monsieur le duc.

<sup>2</sup> The adjectives of number are the cardinal and ordinal numerals: see §§ 127, 128. For adjectives of quantity see § 126, (1), (2), (3), (4), *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j*.

c. The article is used in French in a number of current phrases where it is idiomatically omitted in English. Ex.: *at school* = à l'école; *in church* = à l'église; *last year* = l'an dernier or l'an passé; *I haven't time* = je n'ai pas le temps; *towards evening* = vers le soir.

### Some and Any.

**109.** *Some* and *any*, used to modify a noun, are generally translated by a definite article preceded by 'de.'<sup>1</sup>

Ex.: *we have some bread* = nous avons **du** pain; *give me some meat* = donnez-moi **de la** viande; *they have drunk some water* = ils ont bu **de** l'eau; *have you eaten any strawberries* = avez-vous mangé **des** fraises?

a. When *some* and *any* are nearly equivalent to an indefinite article, they are translated either by 'quelque' (kèlk), *some*, or by 'un' (ë), *a*, feminine 'une' (ün): *some thief has stolen it* = quelque voleur l'a pris; *have they any father* = ont-ils un père? But after the negative words 'guère,' 'jamais,' 'pas,' 'plus,' 'point,'<sup>2</sup> *any* meaning *a* or *an* corresponds to 'de'; and after 'sans' (sà or sâz), *without*, it is not translated at all: *she hasn't any mother* = elle n'a pas de mère; *without any teacher* = sans maître.

b. *Some* meaning *a few* is 'quelques' (kèlk or kèl-kez): *some friends were waiting for us* = quelques amis nous attendaient. For *a few* used as a pronoun see § 126, i.

c. *Any* meaning *no matter what* is 'quelconque' (kèl-kòòk) or 'n'importe quel' (nè-pòr-te-kèl). 'Quelconque' follows its noun, and is seldom used in the plural. For the forms of 'quel' see § 90, (2). Ex.: *ask me any question* = faites-moi une question quelconque; *give them any sum* = donnez-leur n'importe quelle somme.

d. *Any* meaning *every* is 'chaque' (chak) or 'tout' (tu). The feminine of 'tout' is 'toute' (tut). Ex.: *any child will tell you* = chaque enfant vous le dira.

**110.** *Some* and *any* are often omitted in English, but in French they are nearly always expressed. Hence the

<sup>1</sup> For *some* and *any* used as pronouns see § 39, (2), and § 65.

<sup>2</sup> See § 39.

combination of 'de' and the definite article must, in general, be used in all cases where the adjective *some* or *any* would not be out of place in English. See, however, § 109, *a, b, c, d.*

Ex.: *they have [some] courage* = ils ont **du** courage; *she has [some] money* = elle a **de** l'argent; *have you [any] change* = avez-vous **de la** monnaie? *nothing but [some] coppers* = rien que **des** sous.

*a.* 'Du,' 'de la,' etc., are omitted after 'de,' 'sans,' 'ni,' and often after 'soit' . . . 'soit' . . ., *either* . . . *or* . . . Ex.: *are you in need of [any] help* = avez-vous besoin **de** secours? *we have neither [any] relatives nor [any] friends* = nous n'avons **ni** parents **ni** amis; *he is without [any] money* = il est **sans** argent. They are omitted also in many idiomatic expressions that must be learned by observation; *does she pay [any] attention* = fait-elle attention?

**111.** In the two cases described below in (1) and (2) the article is left out, and the idea of *some* or *any* is expressed by 'de' alone.

*a.* Before a vowel sound the *e* of the preposition 'de' is always replaced by an apostrophe.

(1) When the French noun is *immediately preceded* by an adjective: *have you any good coffee* = avez-vous **de** bon café? *he told me some fine things* = il m'a raconté **de** belles choses; *[any] such friends are rare* = **de** tels amis sont rares; *she has [some] other intentions* = elle a **d'**autres intentions.

*a.* This rule is often disregarded in familiar speech, and sometimes in literary French.

*b.* If the adjective and the noun form a compound with a special signification, the article is regularly used: *common sense* = du bon sens; *kindling wood* = du petit bois; *honesty* = de la bonne foi; *young men* = des jeunes gens; *green peas* = des petits pois; *grand-sons* = des petits-fils; *fathers-in-law* = des beaux-pères.

*c.* An adjective used substantively is treated as a noun: *there are [some] rich and [some] poor* = il y a des riches et des pauvres. But

if the adjective is governed by a verb accompanied by the pronoun 'en,' only 'de' is used before it: *there are some flowers — I see [some] white, [some] yellow, and [some] red ones* = voilà des fleurs — j'en vois de blanches, de jaunes, et de rouges. The pronoun *others* is 'd'autres' (dóótr): *others will see it* = d'autres le verront.

(2) When the French noun is the direct object of a verb modified by 'ne . . . guère,' 'ne . . . jamais,' 'ne . . . pas,' 'ne . . . plus,' or 'ne . . . point': *he asked me not to make any noise* = il me pria de ne pas faire **de** bruit; *they haven't any friends* = ils n'ont point **d'**amis; *you will not have any more luck* = vous n'aurez plus **de** chance; *we have never done any harm* = nous n'avons jamais fait **de** mal; *she has hardly any courage* = elle n'a guère **de** courage.

a. If the verb is omitted, the construction is the same: *no more inequality* = plus d'inégalité!

b. If the noun is modified by a following phrase or clause, the article is generally kept: *he hasn't any such base sentiments* = il n'a pas des sentiments si bas; *never give any advice that it is dangerous to follow* = ne donnez jamais des conseils qu'il soit dangereux de suivre.

c. In a negative question, if an affirmative answer is confidently expected, the article is used: *haven't you money and friends* = n'avez-vous pas de l'argent et des amis?

### INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

**112.** The French indefinite article is 'un' (ĕ), feminine 'une' (ün). Before a word beginning with a vowel sound 'un' is pronounced (ĕn). Ex.: *a horse* = un cheval (ĕch-val); *a woman* = une femme (ün-fam); *a man* = un homme (ĕ-nòm), but *a hero* = un héros (ĕ-é-ró) with "aspirate h."

a. After 'sans' the indefinite article is generally omitted in French; before the direct object of a negative verb it is replaced by 'de': *a little boy without a hat* = un petit garçon sans chapeau; *they have never had a child* = ils n'ont jamais eu d'enfant. But if English *a* or *an*, in such cases, is equivalent to *even one*, it must be translated by

the French 'un' or 'une': *without a mistake* = sans une faute; *I'll not give a cent* = je ne donnerai pas un sou. *A single* is 'un seul' (Û-sÛl), feminine 'une seule' (Ûn-sÛl).

b. When *a* or *an* is equivalent to *per*, it is translated either by the definite article or by the preposition 'par' (par): *one franc a quart* = un franc le litre; *ten cents a pound* = dix sous la livre; *twice a day* = deux fois par jour. The French generally use the definite article in stating prices, and 'par' in other cases.

c. In a descriptive sentence where the thing described is the subject of the verb *to have*, while the object is a noun representing some part of the thing described, modified, in English, by an indefinite article and an adjective, the *a* or *an* is usually translated, in French, by the definite article, and the adjective follows the noun: *she has a small mouth* = elle a la bouche petite; *this animal has a long tail* = cet animal a la queue longue. The definite article is used also before a plural noun similarly situated: *he had blue eyes* = il avait les yeux bleus.

d. *Such a* before a noun is 'un tel' (Û-tÛl), feminine 'une telle' (Ûn-tÛl): *such a grief* = une telle douleur; *such an event* = un tel ÛvÛnement. But if the noun is modified by an adjective, *such a* is *a so*, 'un si' (Û-si), feminine 'une si' (Ûn-si): *such a terrible grief* = une si affreuse douleur; *such an unexpected event* = un ÛvÛnement si imprÛvu. The 'si' must immediately precede the adjective it modifies.

e. When an indefinite article modifies several nouns, it must be expressed, in French, before every one: *an old man and woman* = un vieux et une vieille.

**113.** The indefinite article, though expressed in English, is regularly omitted in French in the four cases mentioned below in (1), (2), (3), (4).

a. It is omitted also in a number of idioms that must be learned by observation: *I have a pain in my eyes* = j'ai mal aux yeux.

(1) Before a predicate noun used to denote the nationality, standing, profession, party, religion, or character of the subject or the direct object of a verb: *I am an American* = je suis AmÛricain; *I thought him an Englishman* = je le croyais Anglais; *she was a marchioness* = elle Ûtait marquise; *she became a queen* = elle devint reine; *he was made a minister* = il fut fait ministre; *they*

*will make him a general* = on le fera général ; *you are a republican* = vous êtes républicain ; *I have become a Protestant* = je suis devenu protestant ; *he died a Christian* = il mourut chrétien ; *I considered him a man of honor* = je le réputais homme d'honneur.

*a.* The article is generally used, however, if the noun is modified by an adjective, a phrase, or a relative clause: *Mrs. B. is a great actress* = Madame B. est une grande actrice ; *Mr. D. is a Frenchman from the south* = Mr. D. est un Français du midi ; *that gentleman is a merchant who is starting for Africa* = ce monsieur-là est un négociant qui part pour l'Afrique.

*b.* Before the verb *to be* followed by a predicate noun, *he* and *she* are commonly translated by 'ce': see § 63, *a.* In this case the article is used: *he is an Italian* = c'est un Italien ; *she is a princess* = c'est une princesse. 'Ce' is often inserted even when the logical subject has already been expressed in the form of a noun or a demonstrative or possessive pronoun: *that man there is a painter* = cet homme-là, c'est un peintre.

(2) Before a noun used in apposition to a preceding noun or pronoun: *the Mississippi, a great river in North America* = le Mississippi, grand fleuve de l'Amérique du nord ; *the latter, a member of the City Council* = celui-ci, membre du conseil municipal. Compare § 107, *b.*

(3) Before 'cent' (sâ), *a hundred*, and 'mille' (mil), *a thousand*. Ex.: *a hundred times* = cent fois ; *a thousand years* = mille ans.

(4) After 'quel,' *what*, in exclamations: *what a bore* = quel supplice ! See § 91, *a.*



## 9. ADJECTIVES.

**114.** French adjectives change their form according as the noun or pronoun they modify is masculine or feminine, singular or plural: *this bad weather* = ce mauvais temps (se-mò-vè-tâ); *some bad news* = de mauvaises nouvelles (de-mò-vèz-nu-vèl). The form of the adjective that is found in dictionaries is that of the masculine singular.

*a.* Nearly all the cardinal numerals are invariable. See § 127, etc.

*b.* For the invariable adjectives of quantity see § 126, etc.

*c.* French nouns used as adjectives are regularly invariable. They follow the word they modify. Ex.: *Empire furniture* = des meubles Empire; *orange ribbons* = des rubans orange.

*d.* In English, the substance of which anything is made is usually designated by a noun used adjectively, or by an adjective in *-en*, standing before the noun it modifies; in French, material is denoted by placing after the modified word the preposition 'de' or 'en' followed by a noun. Ex.: *a marble palace* = un palais de marbre; *some wooden chairs* = des chaises de bois; *a gold watch* = une montre d'or; *some porcelain flowers* = des fleurs en porcelaine. Of the two prepositions, 'de' is the one generally used in ordinary combinations; 'en' calls attention more particularly to the material, and corresponds more nearly to English *made of*.

**Form.**

**115.** French adjectives form their feminine by adding silent *e* to the masculine singular: *pretty* = *m.* joli (jò-li), *f.* jolie (jò-li); *bare* = *m.* nu (nü), *f.* nue (nü); *busy* = *m.* occupé (ò-kü-pé), *f.* occupée (ò-kü-pé).

If the masculine singular ends in a silent consonant letter, that consonant is sounded in the feminine: *all* = *m.* tout (tu), *f.* toute (tut); *tall* = *m.* grand (grâ), *f.* grande (grââd). *S* is then pronounced (z): *bad* = *m.* mauvais (mò-vè), *f.* mauvaise (mò-vèèz).

If the masculine singular ends in silent *n*, the preceding vowel is not nasal in the feminine: *ugly* = *m.* vilain (vi-lè), *f.* vilaine (vi-lèn); *full* = *m.* plein (plè), *f.* pleine (plèn); *fine* = *m.* fin (fè), *f.* fine (fin); *no* = *m.* aucun (ó-kè), *f.* aucune (ó-kün). See § 3, *f.*

The following particular cases are to be noted: —

(1) If the masculine singular ends in silent *e*, the masculine and the feminine are exactly alike: *every* = *m.* chaque (chak), *f.* chaque (chak); *easy* = *m.* facile (fa-sil), *f.* facile (fa-sil).

(2) Adjectives ending in *as*, *c*, *el*, *er*, *et*, *eur*, *f*, *gu*, *ien* or *yen*, or *x* have special variations in the feminine: —

| MASCULINE.                           | FEMININE.                      | EXAMPLES.  |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| <b>as</b> (â)                        | <b>asse</b> (âs)               | <i>low</i> = bas, basse  |
| <b>c</b> (κ)                         | <b>que</b> (κ)                 | <i>public</i> = public, publique                               |
| <b>el</b> (èl)                       | <b>elle</b> (èl)               | <i>cruel</i> = cruel, cruelle                                  |
| <b>er</b> (é) }<br><b>er</b> (èèr) } | <b>ère</b> (èèr)               | { <i>light</i> = léger, légère<br><i>dear</i> = cher, chère    |
| <b>et</b> (è) }<br><b>et</b> (èt) }  | <b>ette</b> (èt) <sup>1</sup>  | { <i>younger</i> = cadet, cadette<br><i>clear</i> = net, nette |
| <b>eur</b> (ëèr)                     | <b>euse</b> (ööz) <sup>2</sup> | <i>flattering</i> = flatteur, flatteuse                        |
| <b>f</b> (f)                         | <b>ve</b> (v)                  | <i>new</i> = neuf, neuve                                       |
| <b>gu</b> (gü)                       | <b>guë</b> (gü)                | <i>sharp</i> = aigu, aiguë                                     |
| <b>ien, yen</b> (yè)                 | <b>ienne, yenne</b> (yèn)      | <i>ancient</i> = ancien, ancienne                              |
| <b>x</b> ( <i>silent</i> )           | <b>se</b> (z)                  | <i>happy</i> = heureux, heureuse                               |

(3) Some of the following adjectives have an irregular feminine, and all of them have double forms in the masculine singular: —

|                    | MASCULINE.              |                         | FEMININE.                |
|--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>beautiful</i> : | <b>beau</b> (bó),       | <b>bel</b> (bèl);       | <b>belle</b> (bèl)       |
| <i>new</i> :       | <b>nouveau</b> (nU-vó), | <b>nouvel</b> (nU-vèl); | <b>nouvelle</b> (nU-vèl) |
| <i>old</i> :       | <b>vieux</b> (vyö),     | <b>vieil</b> (vyèy);    | <b>vieille</b> (vyèy)    |
| <i>crazy</i> :     | <b>fou</b> (fu),        | <b>fol</b> (fòl);       | <b>folle</b> (fòl)       |
| <i>soft</i> :      | <b>mou</b> (mU),        | <b>mol</b> (mòl);       | <b>molle</b> (mòl)       |

<sup>1</sup> But 'complet,' 'concret,' 'discret,' 'inquiet,' 'replet,' 'secret' form their feminine in *-ête* (èt): *complete* = *m.* complet (κò-plè), *f.* complète (κò-plèt).

<sup>2</sup> But 'majeur,' 'meilleur,' 'mineur,' and all adjectives in *-érieur* form their feminine regularly in *-eure* (ëèr): *better* = *m.* meilleur (mè-yëèr), *f.* meilleure (mè-yëèr). 'Plusieurs' and the possessive 'leur' make no change for the feminine.

Of the masculine forms, those in the second column are used before a noun beginning with a vowel sound, those in the first column under all other circumstances. Ex.: *he is handsome* = il est beau, *a fine gentleman* = un beau monsieur, *a fine-looking man* = un bel homme, *a fine woman* = une belle femme; *it's old* = c'est vieux, *an old hat* = un vieux chapeau, *an old coat* = un vieil habit, *an old boot* = une vieille botte. For the demonstrative adjective 'ce' see § 97.

(4) Some other adjectives form their feminine irregularly; the commonest ones — aside from possessives — are given below:—

|                    | MASCULINE.               | FEMININE.                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>white</i>       | <b>blanc</b> (blá)       | <b>blanche</b> (bláách)      |
| <i>good</i>        | <b>bon</b> (bò)          | <b>bonne</b> (bòn)           |
| <i>short</i>       | <b>bref</b> (brèf)       | <b>brève</b> (brèv)          |
| <i>sweet</i>       | <b>doux</b> (dú)         | <b>douce</b> (dús)           |
| <i>thick</i>       | <b>épais</b> (é-pè)      | <b>épaisse</b> (é-pèès)      |
| <i>false</i>       | <b>faux</b> (fó)         | <b>fausse</b> (fóós)         |
| <i>favorite</i>    | <b>favori</b> (fa-vò-ri) | <b>favorite</b> (fa-vò-rit)  |
| <i>fresh</i>       | <b>frais</b> (frè)       | <b>fraîche</b> (frèèch)      |
| <i>frank</i>       | <b>franc</b> (frá)       | <b>franche</b> (fráách)      |
| <i>nice</i>        | <b>gentil</b> (já-ti)    | <b>gentille</b> (já-tiiy)    |
| <i>Greek</i>       | <b>grec</b> (Grèk)       | <b>grecque</b> (Grèk)        |
| <i>big</i>         | <b>gros</b> (Gró)        | <b>grosse</b> (Gróós)        |
| <i>twin</i>        | <b>jumeau</b> (jü-mó)    | <b>jumelle</b> (jü-mèl)      |
| <i>long</i>        | <b>long</b> (lò)         | <b>longue</b> (lòòg)         |
| <i>smart</i>       | <b>malin</b> (ma-lè)     | <b>maligne</b> (ma-liñ)      |
| <i>no</i>          | <b>nul</b> (nül)         | <b>nulle</b> (nül)           |
| <i>like</i>        | <b>pareil</b> (pa-rèy)   | <b>pareille</b> (pa-rèy)     |
| <i>red</i>         | <b>roux</b> (rú)         | <b>rousse</b> (rus)          |
| <i>dry</i>         | <b>sec</b> (sèk)         | <b>sèche</b> (sèch)          |
| <i>silly</i>       | <b>sot</b> (só)          | <b>sothe</b> (sòt)           |
| <i>treacherous</i> | <b>traître</b> (trèètr)  | <b>traîtresse</b> (trè-très) |

a. When present participles are used adjectively, they form their feminine in the same way as adjectives: *running* = *m.* courant, *f.* courante.

b. Past participles make their feminine in the same way as adjectives: *loved* = *m.* aimé, *f.* aimée; *taken* = *m.* pris, *f.* prise. For a few irregular forms see § 32.

**116.** French adjectives form their plural by adding *s* to the singular: *pretty* = *m. sing.* joli (jò-li) *m. pl.* jolis (jò-li), *f. sing.* jolie (jò-li) *f. pl.* jolies (jò-li); *tall* = *m. sing.* grand (grâ) *m. pl.* grands (grâ), *f. sing.* grande (grââd) *f. pl.* grandes (grââd).

This *s* is generally pronounced (z) before a word beginning with a vowel sound; under all other circumstances it is silent: *they are small* = ils sont petits (il-sòp-ti) *or* elles sont petites (èl-sòp-tit), *two little boys* = deux petits garçons (döp-ti-gar-sò), *three little girls* = trois petites filles (trwâp-tit-fiiy), *these little heroes* = ces petits héros (sèp-ti-é-ró); *two little children* = deux petits enfants (döp-ti-zâ-fâ), *three little stars* = trois petites étoiles (trwâp-tit-zé-twal).

The formation of the feminine plural presents no new irregularities.<sup>1</sup> For the **masculine plural** the following special cases are to be noted:—

(1) If the singular ends in *s* or *x*, the singular and the plural are exactly alike: *fat* = *sing.* gras (grâ), *pl.* gras (grâ); *old* = *sing.* vieux (vyö), *pl.* vieux (vyö).

(2) Adjectives in *-al* form their plural in *-aux* (ó): *moral* = *sing.* moral (mò-ral), *pl.* moraux (mò-ró). But 'fatal,' 'final,' 'frugal,' 'glacial,' 'naval,' 'pénal' simply add *s*.<sup>2</sup>

(3) The adjectives 'beau,' *beautiful*, 'nouveau,' *new*, and 'hébreu,' *Hebrew*, add *x* instead of *s*.

(4) The six adjectives with double forms in the masculine singular make their masculine plural from the first form:—

|          |                                    |                                      |
|----------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ce,      | <i>pl.</i> <b>ces</b> (sè)         | vieux, <i>pl.</i> <b>vieux</b> (vyö) |
| beau,    | <i>pl.</i> <b>beaux</b> (bó)       | fou, <i>pl.</i> <b>fous</b> (fu)     |
| nouveau, | <i>pl.</i> <b>nouveaux</b> (nU-vó) | mou, <i>pl.</i> <b>mous</b> (mU)     |

<sup>1</sup> We have already seen that 'cette,' 'ma,' 'ta,' 'sa' have in the plural 'ces,' 'mes,' 'tes,' 'ses.' See §§ 78, 97.

<sup>2</sup> These plurals in *-als* are seldom used. 'Astral,' 'automnal,' 'colossal,' 'matinal,' 'natal,' 'pascal' have no masculine plural.

The final *s* or *x* is pronounced (*z*) before a vowel sound, and is silent under all other circumstances.

(5) The adjective 'tout' (tu), *all*, has for its masculine plural 'tous' (tu) : *all men* = tous les hommes.

*a.* The pronoun 'tous,' *all*, is pronounced (tus) : *I see all of them* = je les vois tous.

*b.* For the plural of possessive adjectives see § 78.

### Agreement.

**117.** French adjectives have either the masculine or the feminine and either the singular or the plural form, according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun they modify.

Ex. : *a pretty little boy* = un joli petit garçon ; *a pretty little girl* = une jolie petite fille ; *little birds are pretty* = les petits oiseaux sont jolis ; *these little flowers are pretty* = ces petites fleurs sont jolies ; *he is small* = il est petit ; *she is pretty* = elle est jolie ; *are they [masc.] small* = sont-ils petits ? *how pretty they [fem.] are* = qu'elles sont jolies !

*a.* For present participles see § 18, *b.*

*b.* For the agreement of past participles see § 18, *c, d.*

*c.* There are no neuter nouns in French. An adjective modifying a neuter pronoun or a whole clause or idea has the form of the masculine singular : *how beautiful it is* = que c'est beau ! *it is good to know how to hold your tongue* = il est bon de savoir se taire.

*d.* *Something, anything, nothing*, followed by an adjective, are translated by 'quelque chose de' and 'rien de,' with the adjective in the masculine singular : *I have something beautiful* = j'ai quelque chose de beau ; *is there anything new* = y a-t-il quelque chose de nouveau ? *there isn't anything pretty* = il n'y a rien de joli ; *he has done nothing very good* = il n'a rien fait de très bon. In exclamations 'quoi de' is similarly used : *what [is there] more interesting than these birds* = quoi de plus intéressant que ces oiseaux !

*e.* If the adverb 'tout' (tu), *entirely*, modifies a feminine adjective or past participle that immediately follows it, and this adjective or

participle begins with a consonant sound or "aspirate *h*," the adverb becomes 'toute' (tut) or 'toutes' (tut) according as the adjective or participle is singular or plural: *they are all ready* = elles sont toutes prêtes; *she was quite surprised* = elle fut toute surprise [*but elle fut tout étonnée*].

**118.** A predicate adjective modifying several nouns or pronouns must be in the *masculine plural*, unless all the nouns or pronouns are feminine, in which case it is in the *feminine plural*.

Ex.: *the brother and sister are good* = le frère et la sœur sont bons; *my daughter and my niece are small* = ma fille et ma nièce sont petites.

**119.** In English an adjective modifying several nouns is often expressed before the first and omitted before the others: *a fine horse and carriage*. In French such cases are differently treated according to the nature of the adjective. Some French adjectives precede and others follow the nouns they modify: see § 122.

(1) An adjective that precedes its noun is generally expressed before every noun it modifies: *a pretty little boy and girl* = un joli petit garçon et une jolie petite fille.

(2) An adjective that follows its noun need not be repeated, but stands at the end of the series: *the French language and literature* = la langue et la littérature françaises. It agrees sometimes with all the nouns collectively, and sometimes with the last one: —

*a.* If the nouns are connected by 'et' (é), *and*, the adjective regularly agrees with them all; that is, it is in the *masculine plural*, unless the nouns are all feminine, in which case it is in the *feminine plural*. Ex.: *a black table and chair* = une table et une chaise noires; *an astonishing prudence and courage* = une prudence et un courage étonnants.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In such cases, when the nouns are of different genders, a masculine noun should be placed next to the adjective; it would be inelegant to say 'un courage et une prudence étonnants.'

*b.* If the nouns are disconnected, or are connected by 'ou' (u), or, the adjective usually agrees with the last of them: *he showed uncommon vigor, ardor, passion* = il montrait un élan, une ardeur, une passion peu commune; *has he a marked liking or dislike for this profession* = a-t-il un penchant ou une répugnance marquée pour cette profession?

**120.** Often the noun modified by an adjective is omitted, and the adjective is used substantively: *white bread and brown; the grave and the gay*. This construction is commoner in French than in English. The adjective takes the gender and number of the noun it represents.

Ex.: *the little girl* = la petite; *the rich man and the poor man* = le riche et le pauvre; *three hours and a half* = trois heures et demie; *the wise and the foolish* = les sages et les imprudents.

*a.* If the adjective is used substantively as the name of a color, or as an abstract noun, it is in the masculine singular: *the red, the white, and the blue* = le rouge, le blanc, et le bleu; *the good and the bad* [= *the goodness and the badness*] = le bon et le mauvais.

*b.* *One* or *ones* after an adjective is not to be translated: *a big one* = un grand or une grande; *the little one* = le petit or la petite; *some old ones* = des vieux or des vieilles. If, however, the adjective must be rendered in French by a prepositional phrase, *the one* or *the ones* is to be translated by the proper form of the pronoun 'celui': *the Paris style and the London one* = la mode de Paris et celle de Londres; *the silk gowns and the satin ones* = les robes de soie et celles de satin. See § 100, *e.*

### Position.

**121.** The position of French adjectives must, to a great extent, be learned by observation.

*a.* In English exclamatory sentences introduced by *how*, the adjective, if there is one, stands next to this word; in French the adjective comes after the verb. *How* is translated by 'que' (ke) or 'comme' (kòm). Ex.: *how good you are* = que vous êtes bon! Adverbs, in such sentences, have the same position as adjectives: *how well he sings* = qu'il chante bien! A similar construction is found in clauses intro-

duced by *the* with a comparative: *the better one is, the more one is loved* = plus on est bon, plus on est aimé. See § 107, c.

b. *The whole*, before a noun, is translated by the proper form of 'tout' [see § 116, (5)] followed by a definite article: *the whole city* = toute la ville. *All*, before an abstract or a plural noun, is translated in the same way: *all human wisdom* = toute la sagesse humaine; *all Englishmen* = tous les Anglais.<sup>1</sup>

**122.** In English an adjective used with a noun nearly always precedes it. In French the adjective is placed after the noun as often as before it; the longer or more emphatic word generally tends to follow the shorter or less important one.

(1) Some adjectives regularly stand before their noun: —

a. **Possessive, interrogative, demonstrative, and numeral adjectives and adjective phrases of quantity** precede: *my father* = mon père; *what country* = quel pays? *this village* = ce village; *two cities* = deux villes; *bread enough* = assez de pain.

b. The following adjectives generally precede: —

|                        |                        |                         |                     |
|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| beau, <i>beautiful</i> | jeune, <i>young</i>    | meilleur, <i>better</i> | sot, <i>silly</i>   |
| bon, <i>good</i>       | joli, <i>pretty</i>    | moindre, <i>less</i>    | vaste, <i>vast</i>  |
| grand, <i>tall</i>     | mauvais, <i>bad</i>    | petit, <i>little</i>    | vilain, <i>ugly</i> |
| gros, <i>big</i>       | méchant, <i>wicked</i> | pire, <i>worse</i>      | vieux, <i>old</i>   |

(2) Some regularly come after: —

a. Adjectives denoting **shape, color, nationality, religion, or politics** nearly always follow: *a round table* = une table ronde; *blue eyes* = des yeux bleus; *some red flowers* = des fleurs rouges; *a Prussian officer* = un officier prussien; *the Catholic priest* = le prêtre catholique; *this Republican paper* = ce journal républicain.

b. **Past participles** used as adjectives follow: *a spoiled child* = un enfant gâté.

<sup>1</sup> *All* and *the whole*, used as pronouns, are rendered by 'tout,' sometimes by 'le tout': *I have seen all or the whole* = j'ai tout vu [see § 41, c]; *the whole is magnificent* = le tout est magnifique.



*c.* **Nouns used as adjectives** always follow: *the Clémenceau business* = l'affaire Clémenceau; *the frog man* = l'homme-grenouille.

*d.* **Phrases used adjectively** — except phrases of quantity — always follow: *London papers* = les journaux de Londres; *a gold watch* = une montre d'or. Similarly, an adverbial phrase follows its adjective: *ten years old* = âgé de dix ans; *six feet tall* = grand de six pieds.

(3) Others stand **before or after**, according to circumstances: —

*a.* When the sense of the adjective is really contained in the noun, and when the use of the adjective is prompted by any emotion, — such as love, hate, indignation, surprise, pity, or admiration, — **the adjective usually precedes**; when the adjective is used to convey information about the noun, **it generally follows**. Ex.: *a sweet perfume* = un doux parfum, *a sweet smell* = une odeur douce; *the cruel tyrant had him murdered* = le cruel tyran le fit assassiner, *he is a cruel man* = c'est un homme cruel.

*b.* Some adjectives may be used literally or figuratively: when used figuratively, they ordinarily precede; when taken in their literal sense, they nearly always follow. Ex.: *a great man* = un grand homme, *a tall man* = un homme grand<sup>1</sup>: *a close friendship* = une étroite amitié, *a narrow road* = un chemin étroit.

*c.* An adjective modified by a phrase or by an adverb of more than one syllable follows its noun: *a child as beautiful as day* = un enfant beau comme le jour; *an infinitely small cause* = une cause infiniment petite.

### Comparison.

**123.** English adjectives form their comparative either by adding *-er* or by prefixing *more*, and their superlative either by adding *-est* or by prefixing *most*. Ex.: *small, smaller, smallest*; *difficult, more difficult, most difficult*.

French adjectives make their comparative by prefixing 'plus' to the positive, and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative. Ex.: *petit, plus*

---

<sup>1</sup> But 'grand,' *tall*, generally precedes any noun except 'homme': *a big boy* = un grand garçon.

petit, le plus petit; petite, plus petite, la plus petite; petits, plus petits, les plus petits; petites, plus petites, les plus petites.

(1) 'Plus' means *more*; 'le plus' means *the most*.<sup>1</sup> 'Plus' is pronounced (plü) before a consonant or "aspirate *h*," (plüz) before a vowel sound. Ex.: *longer* [m. pl.] = plus longs (plü-lò); *the most useful* [f. sing.] = la plus utile (la-plü-zü-til).

(2) In the superlative of an adjective that follows its noun, the definite article must immediately precede the 'plus,' even if it has already been used just before the noun. Ex.: *the most difficult problem* = le problème le plus difficile.

(3) 'Le plus' is regularly invariable before an adjective modifying a noun or pronoun that is compared with itself: *it was then that she was most surprised* = c'est alors qu'elle fut le plus surprise. 'Le plus' is invariable also when it does not modify an adjective: *which one is most to your taste* = laquelle est le plus à votre goût?

a. When several superlatives modify the same noun, the definite article and the 'plus' must be expressed before every one: *the dearest and most faithful friend* = l'ami le plus cher et le plus fidèle or le plus cher et le plus fidèle ami.

b. In French, as in English, a possessive adjective may take the place of the article before the noun: *my dearest friend* = mon plus cher ami; *my most faithful servant* = mon serviteur le plus fidèle.

c. When *most* is equivalent to *very*, it is translated by some adverb meaning *very*. Ex.: *this most beautiful landscape* = ce très beau paysage.

d. Degrees of inferiority may be expressed by substituting 'moins' (mwè or mwèz) for 'plus': *useful, less useful, least useful* = utile, moins utile, le moins utile. 'Moins' means *less*; 'le moins' means *the least*.

e. Adverbs are compared in the same way as adjectives, the form of the article being always that of the masculine singular: *happily, more happily, most happily* = heureusement, plus heureusement, le plus heureusement.

---

<sup>1</sup> The French make no distinction between the superlative and the comparative after the definite article: *the more beautiful* = *the most beautiful* = le plus beau.

f. Correlative *the . . . the . . .*, followed by comparatives, is translated by 'plus' . . . 'plus' . . ., with the simple positive form of the adjective or adverb: *the better people are, the happier they are* = plus on est bon, plus on est heureux; *the worse she sings, the more she is applauded* = plus elle chante mal, plus elle est applaudie. See § 107, c, and § 121, a.

**124.** The adjectives 'bon' and 'mauvais' are irregularly compared:—

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>good</i> = <b>bon</b> (bò)             | <i>bad</i> = <b>mauvais</b> (mò-vè) |
| <i>better</i> = <b>meilleur</b> (mè-yëër) | <i>worse</i> = <b>pire</b> (piir)   |
| <i>best</i> = <b>le meilleur</b>          | <i>worst</i> = <b>le pire</b>       |

'Mauvais,' however, has regular forms also. The feminine of 'meilleur' is 'meilleure.' For 'mauvais' and 'bon' see § 115 and § 115, (4).

a. *Less* meaning *smaller* is 'moindre' (mwèèdr), *the least* meaning *the smallest* = 'le moindre': *the least thing* = la moindre chose.

b. The following four *adverbs* are irregularly compared:—

|   |
|---|
| <i>well, better, best</i> = <b>bien</b> (byè), <b>mieux</b> (myö), <b>le mieux</b>      |
| <i>ill,<sup>1</sup> worse, worst</i> = <b>mal</b> (mal), <b>pis</b> (pi), <b>le pis</b> |
| <i>much, more, most</i> = <b>beaucoup</b> (bó-ku), <b>plus</b> (plü), <b>le plus</b>    |
| <i>little, less, least</i> = <b>peu</b> (pö), <b>moins</b> (mwè), <b>le moins</b>       |

Before a vowel sound 'bien,' 'mieux,' 'pis,' 'plus,' 'moins' are pronounced (byèn), (myöz), (piz), (plüz), (mwèz).

c. *The best, the worst, the most, the least*, used as indefinite pronouns, are 'le mieux,' 'le pis,' 'le plus,' 'le moins': *the least he can do* = le moins qu'il puisse faire. *The best there is* = ce qu'il y a de mieux.

d. *Better* modifying a neuter pronoun or a whole clause or idea is generally translated by 'mieux' rather than by 'meilleur': *that's better* = c'est mieux.<sup>2</sup> Under similar circumstances 'pis' sometimes takes the place of 'pire.'

<sup>1</sup> 'Mal' corresponds also to *badly* and *poorly*.

<sup>2</sup> 'Mieux' is used also, in the sense of *better-looking*, to modify any noun or pronoun: *she is prettier than her sister* = elle est mieux que sa sœur. 'Bien' is sometimes employed as an adjective with the signification *good-looking*.

*e.* *More* at the end of a sentence is often translated by 'davantage' (da-vâ-taaj): *that will please him more* = cela lui plaira davantage. The word for *much* before 'davantage' is 'bien' and not 'beaucoup'; before 'plus' either 'bien' or 'beaucoup' may be used: *much more* = beaucoup plus, bien plus, or bien davantage.

*f.* *Very much* is 'beaucoup.'

**125.** *Than* is 'que' (кe): *he is taller than I* = il est plus grand que moi (i-lè-plü-grâk-mwa). Before a vowel sound the *e* of 'que' is replaced by an apostrophe: *you are younger than she* = vous êtes plus jeune qu'elle (vu-zèt-plü-jën-kèl).

*a.* Before a numeral, *more than* and *less than*, meaning *a greater number than* and *a smaller number than*, are translated by 'plus de' and 'moins de': *I have seen more than four of them* = j'en ai vu plus de quatre; *this month has less than thirty days* = ce mois a moins de trente jours.

*b.* *As . . . as . . .* is 'aussi' . . . 'que' . . . (ó-si ke); *so . . . as . . .* is 'si' . . . 'que' . . .; *as* without a correlative word is 'comme' (kòm); *so* is 'si': *you are as tall as he* = vous êtes aussi grand que lui; *he isn't so small as I* = il n'est pas si petit que moi; *white as snow* = blanche comme la neige; *they are so stupid* = ils sont si bêtes!

*c.* *As much as* and *as many as* are 'autant que' (ó-tâk); *so much as* and *so many as* are 'tant que' (tâk); *so much* and *so many* are 'tant' (tâ): *they have eaten as much as we* = ils ont mangé autant que nous; *he hasn't seen so many as I* = il n'en a pas tant vu que moi; *you drink so much* = vous buvez tant! *As much, as many* and *so much, so many*, followed by a noun, are 'autant de' and 'tant de': *I have as many books as our teacher* = j'ai autant de livres que notre professeur; *he hasn't so much courage as his brother* = il n'a pas tant de courage que son frère. See § 126.

### Adjectives of Quantity.

**126.** Most English adjectives of quantity are translated, in French, by adjective phrases ending with the preposition 'de.' These phrases always *precede* the noun they modify. Ex.: *many horses* = beaucoup de chevaux (bó-kud-che-vó); *time enough* = assez de temps (a-séd-tâ).

(1) After these phrases the article is not used in French unless it is needed in English: see § 108, *a*.

(2) Before a vowel sound the *e* of 'de' is replaced by an apostrophe: *little money* = peu d'argent; *how many children* = combien d'enfants?

(3) When the same phrase modifies several nouns, the 'de' must be expressed before every one: *many friends and acquaintances* = beaucoup d'amis et de connaissances.

(4) For the *negative* phrases see § 39, (3). The others are:—

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>as many or as much</i>   | <b>autant de</b> (ó-tád)     |
| <i>enough</i>               | <b>assez de</b> (a-séd)      |
| <i>few</i>                  | <b>peu de</b> (pöd)          |
| <i>how many or how much</i> | <b>combien de</b> (kò-byèd)  |
| <i>least</i>                | <b>le moins de</b> (le-mwèd) |
| <i>less</i>                 | <b>moins de</b> (mwèd)       |
| <i>little</i>               | <b>peu de</b> (pöd)          |
| <i>many</i>                 | <b>beaucoup de</b> (bó-kud)  |
| <i>more</i>                 | <b>plus de</b> (plüd)        |
| <i>most</i>                 | <b>le plus de</b> (le-plüd)  |
| <i>much</i>                 | <b>beaucoup de</b> (bó-kud)  |
| <i>so many or so much</i>   | <b>tant de</b> (tád)         |
| <i>too little</i>           | <b>trop peu de</b> (tró-pöd) |
| <i>too many or too much</i> | <b>trop de</b> (tród)        |

*a.* The words 'assez,' 'autant,' 'beaucoup,' 'combien,' 'moins,' 'peu,' 'plus,' 'tant,' 'trop' are really pronouns, and can be used independently: *I have enough of it* = j'en ai assez; *how much did he give* = combien a-t-il donné?

*b.* The same words are often used as adverbs; 'beaucoup,' 'peu,' and 'trop' then have the additional meanings of *very much*, *but little*, and *too*. Ex.: *she is rich enough* = elle est assez riche; *I love him very much* = je l'aime beaucoup; *you speak but little* = vous parlez peu; *he goes too fast* = il va trop vite.

*c.* Another expression for *many or much*, used adjectively, is 'bien de' (byèd), followed by the definite article. Ex.: *many times* = bien des fois.

d. Another expression for the adjective *how many* or *how much*, used in exclamations, is 'que de' (ked), without any article. Ex.: *how many times* = que de fois!

e. When the adjective *most* or *most of* means — as it generally does — *the greater part of*, it corresponds to 'la plupart de' (la-plü-pard); after this phrase the definite article is not suppressed. Ex.: *most of my friends* = la plupart de mes amis; *most men* = la plupart **des** hommes [see § 108, (1)]; *he knows most of them* = il en connaît la plupart.

f. The adjective *half* with the indefinite article is 'un demi-' (ëd-mi) or 'une demi-' (ünd-mi)<sup>1</sup>: *a half-hour* = une demi-heure; *half a pound* = une demi-livre; *half a foot* = un demi-pied. Before any other word the adjective *half* or *half of* is 'la moitié de' (la-mwa-tyéd)<sup>2</sup>; after this phrase the definite article is not suppressed: *half the class* = la moitié de la classe; *half these people* = la moitié de ces gens; *half of France* = la moitié de la France; *I have read half of it* = j'en ai lu la moitié.

g. The adjective *all* is 'tout'; see § 116, (5), and § 121, b: *all my money* = tout mon argent; *all Paris* = tout Paris; *all France* = toute la France. 'Tout' is used also as a pronoun and as an adverb: *we have done everything* = nous avons tout fait [see § 41, c]; *all red* = tout rouge [see § 117, e].

h. The adjective *some* or *any* is generally translated by 'de' with the definite article; §§ 109, 110, 111: *he has some books* = il a des livres; *do you want any wine* = voulez-vous du vin? The pronoun *some* or *any*, used as direct object of a verb, is 'en'; see § 65 and § 39, (2): *we sell some* = nous en vendons; *I haven't any* = je n'en ai pas. For *some* meaning *some few* or *a few* see Note *i* below. *Some one* or *somebody* is 'quelqu'un' (kèl-kë).

i. The adjective *a few* is 'quelques' (kèlk or kèl-kez): *I have found a few cents* = j'ai trouvé quelques sous. *A few* used as a pronoun is 'quelques-uns' (kèl-ke-zë), feminine 'quelques-unes' (kèl-ke-zün): *give me a few of them* = donnez-m'en quelques-uns.

j. *Both* is 'tous les deux' (tu-lè-dö) or 'tous deux' (tu-dö), feminine 'toutes les deux' (tut-lè-dö) or 'toutes deux' (tut-dö): *both rooms* = toutes les deux chambres; *they both came* = ils sont venus tous les deux. *Both* is translated also by 'l'un et l'autre'; compare § 42, c.

<sup>1</sup> And a half, after a noun, is 'et demi' or 'et demie,' according to the gender of the noun: *a page and a half* = une page et demie.

<sup>2</sup> *A third of* and *a quarter of* are 'le tiers de' and 'le quart de.'

## Numerals.

**127.** The cardinal numerals are given below.

*a.* When used substantively as the names of numbers or figures, they are masculine: *the figure two* = le deux.

(1) The numbers up to *thirty-one* are:—

|                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 un (ĕ)              | 16 seize (sèèz)            |
| 2 deux (dö)           | 17 dix-sept (dis-sèt)      |
| 3 trois (trwâ)        | 18 dix-huit (di-züit)      |
| 4 quatre (katr)       | 19 dix-neuf (diz-nëf)      |
| 5 cinq (sèèk)         | 20 vingt (vè)              |
| 6 six (sis)           | 21 vingt et un (vè-té-ĕ)   |
| 7 sept (sèt)          | 22 vingt-deux (vèt-dö)     |
| 8 huit (üit)          | 23 vingt-trois (vèt-trwâ)  |
| 9 neuf (nëf)          | 24 vingt-quatre (vèt-katr) |
| 10 dix (dis)          | 25 vingt-cinq (vèt-sèèk)   |
| 11 onze (òòz)         | 26 vingt-six (vèt-sis)     |
| 12 douze (duuz)       | 27 vingt-sept (vèt-sèt)    |
| 13 treize (trèèz)     | 28 vingt-huit (vè-tüit)    |
| 14 quatorze (ka-tòrz) | 29 vingt-neuf (vèt-nëf)    |
| 15 quinze (kèèz)      | 30 trente (trädät)         |

*a.* These numbers are all invariable except ‘un,’ which becomes ‘une’ (ün) when it modifies or represents a feminine noun: *have you a watch* = avez-vous une montre? *I have one* = j’en ai une.

*b.* Before a vowel sound the *adjectives* ‘un,’ ‘deux,’ ‘trois,’ ‘six,’ ‘neuf,’ ‘dix,’ ‘vingt’ are pronounced (ĕn), (döz), (trwâz), (siz), (nëv), (diz), (vèt): *one man* = un homme (ĕ-nòm); *two artists* = deux artistes (dö-zar-tist); *nine hours* = neuf heures (në-vëër); *twenty years* = vingt ans (vè-tâ).

*c.* Before a consonant sound or “aspirate *h*” the *adjectives* ‘cinq,’ ‘six,’ ‘sept,’ ‘huit,’ ‘neuf,’ ‘dix’ are pronounced (sè), (si), (sè), (üi), (në), (di): *five times* = cinq fois (sè-fwa); *seven francs* = sept francs (sè-frâ); *ten cents* = dix sous (di-su).

*d.* ‘Huit,’ ‘onze,’ and all their derivatives,—except in the compounds ‘dix-huit,’ ‘dix-huitième,’ ‘vingt-huit,’ ‘vingt-huitième,’—are treated as if they began with “aspirate *h*”: *he has more than eight* =

il en a plus de huit ; *the eleventh of March* = le onze mars ; *the eleventh lesson* = la onzième leçon. *The number one* is 'le un' (le-ë) ; *a hundred and one* is 'cent un' (sâ-ë).

e. We have seen that *both* is 'tous [fem. toutes] les deux' ; similarly *all three, all four, etc.*, are 'tous [toutes] les trois,' 'tous [toutes] les quatre,' etc.

f. *Once, twice, thrice* are 'une fois' (ün-fwa), 'deux fois' (dö-fwa), 'trois fois' (trwâ-fwa).

g. For the indefinite pronoun *one* see § 64.

h. For *one* or *ones* after an adjective see § 120, b.

i. For *the one, the ones* see § 100.

(2) The tens through *one hundred* are : —

|                        |                                     |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 10 dix (dis)           | 60 soixante (swa-sâât)              |
| 20 vingt (vè)          | 70 soixante-dix (swa-sât-dis)       |
| 30 trente (trâât)      | 80 quatre-vingts (ka-tre-vè)        |
| 40 quarante (ka-râât)  | 90 quatre-vingt-dix (ka-tre-vè-dis) |
| 50 cinquante (sè-kâât) | 100 cent (sâ)                       |

a. These numbers are invariable except in the cases mentioned below.

b. Before a vowel sound the *adjectives* 'quatre-vingts' and 'cent' are pronounced (ka-tre-vèz) and (sât) : *eighty men* = quatre-vingts hommes (ka-tre-vè-zòm) ; *a hundred years* = cent ans (sâ-tâ). For the pronunciation of 'dix' and 'vingt' see § 127, (1), b, c, p. 135 ; the prefixing of 'soixante' and 'quatre-vingt' does not affect the sound of 'dix.'

c. If 'cent' is multiplied by another number, it adds an *s*, which is silent except before a vowel sound : *two hundred francs* = deux cents francs (dö-sâ-frâ) ; *three hundred years* = trois cents ans (trwâ-sâ-zâ). But when 'cents' or 'quatre-vingts' is followed by a smaller number, it loses its *s* : *four hundred and six years* = quatre cent six ans ; *eighty-five pages* = quatre-vingt-cinq pages.<sup>1</sup>

d. No indefinite article is used before 'cent,' and no connective is required after it. Ex. : —

101 cent un (sâ-ë)

610 six cent dix

102 cent deux (sâ-dö)

735 sept cent trente-cinq

<sup>1</sup> The *s* is dropped also in dates and in cases where the cardinal number, placed after its noun, stands for an ordinal ; see § 128, a. Ex. : *the year 1880* = l'an dix-huit cent quatre-vingt ; *page 500* = page cinq cent.



(3) The cardinal numerals between 30 and 40, 40 and 50, 50 and 60, 60 and 70 are formed in the same way as those between 20 and 30.<sup>1</sup> The numbers from 70 to 99, inclusive, are peculiar; they are:—

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 70 soixante-dix        | 85 quatre-vingt-cinq     |
| 71 soixante et onze    | 86 quatre-vingt-six      |
| 72 soixante-douze      | 87 quatre-vingt-sept     |
| 73 soixante-treize     | 88 quatre-vingt-huit     |
| 74 soixante-quatorze   | 89 quatre-vingt-neuf     |
| 75 soixante-quinze     | 90 quatre-vingt-dix      |
| 76 soixante-seize      | 91 quatre-vingt-onze     |
| 77 soixante-dix-sept   | 92 quatre-vingt-douze    |
| 78 soixante-dix-huit   | 93 quatre-vingt-treize   |
| 79 soixante-dix-neuf   | 94 quatre-vingt-quatorze |
| 80 quatre-vingts       | 95 quatre-vingt-quinze   |
| 81 quatre-vingt-un     | 96 quatre-vingt-seize    |
| 82 quatre-vingt-deux   | 97 quatre-vingt-dix-sept |
| 83 quatre-vingt-trois  | 98 quatre-vingt-dix-huit |
| 84 quatre-vingt-quatre | 99 quatre-vingt-dix-neuf |

a. In the numbers from 81 to 99, inclusive, 'vingt' is pronounced (vè): *eighty-eight* = quatre-vingt-huit (ka-tre-vè-üit).

(4) *A thousand* is 'mille' (mil). No indefinite article is used before it, and no connective is needed after it. It has no plural form. Ex.: *a thousand and forty dollars* = mille quarante dollars; *twenty thousand leagues* = vingt mille lieues.

a. In dates between 1000 and 2000, A.D., 'mil' is generally written instead of 'mille': *the year 1893* = l'an mil huit cent quatre-vingt-treize.

b. *A million* is 'un million' (ë-mi-lyð). It has a plural form with *s*, and requires 'de' before a following noun. Ex.: *three million francs* = trois millions de francs.

**128.** The ordinal numerals are formed by adding *-ième* (yèm) to the corresponding cardinal numbers. If the

<sup>1</sup> 'Un' is joined to the preceding ten by 'et'; the other numbers are connected by a hyphen. See § 127, (1).

cardinal ends in *e*, this letter is dropped before the *-ième*. The words for *first*, *fifth*, and *ninth* are more or less irregular.

(1) The ordinal numerals through *tenth* are :—

|                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>1st</i> <b>premier</b> (pre-myé)   | <i>6th</i> sixième (si-zyèm)         |
| <i>2d</i> deuxième (dö-zyèm)          | <i>7th</i> septième (sè-tyèm)        |
| <i>3d</i> troisième (trwâ-zyèm)       | <i>8th</i> huitième (üi-tyèm)        |
| <i>4th</i> quatrième (ka-tri-èm)      | <i>9th</i> <b>neuvième</b> (në-vyèm) |
| <i>5th</i> <b>cinquième</b> (sè-kyèm) | <i>10th</i> dixième (di-zyèm)        |

The feminine of 'premier' is 'première' (pre-myèèr). All the ordinal numerals form their plural in *s*, like other adjectives.

(2) *Twenty-first*, *thirty-first*, etc., are 'vingt et unième' (vè-té-ü-nyèm), 'trente et unième,' etc.

(3) Another word for *second* is 'second' (sgò), feminine 'seconde' (sgòòd).

(4) *Twentieth* and *hundredth* are 'vingtième' (vè-tyèm) and 'centième' (sâ-tyèm).

*a.* Cardinal numerals, instead of ordinals, are generally used in French in stating the day of the month or the title of a sovereign, after *the first*. Ex.: *the fourth of July* = le quatre juillet; *the first of April* = le premier avril; *Leo the Thirteenth* = Léon treize; *Charles the First* = Charles premier.

## 10. NOUNS.

**129.** French nouns have only one form for the singular and one for the plural: they have no ending that corresponds to the English possessive 's.

Possession is denoted in French by the preposition 'de' (de), *of*. Ex.: *John's brother* = *the brother of John* = le frère de Jean (le-frère-de-jâ).

Ex.: *his uncle's books* = les livres de son oncle; *my children's happiness* = le bonheur de mes enfants; *Byron's works* = les œuvres de Byron; *the people's friend* = l'ami du peuple.

a. Before a vowel sound the *e* of 'de' is replaced by an apostrophe: *Hercules' foot* = le pied d'Hercule; *a maiden's prayer* = la prière d'une vierge.

b. Sometimes, in English, the name of the thing possessed is omitted after a noun in the possessive: *my field or my neighbor's*. The French, in such cases, use the proper form of 'celui' [see § 100] followed by 'de' and the name of the possessor: mon champ ou celui de mon voisin. Ex.: *Paul's letters and William's* = *the letters of Paul and those of William* = les lettres de Paul et celles de Guillaume; *the people's voice is God's* = *the voice of the people is that of God* = la voix du peuple est celle de Dieu; *woman's rights and man's* = *the rights of woman and those of man* = les droits de la femme et ceux de l'homme. — But when, in English, *home* is understood after a possessive noun preceded by *at* or *to*, the phrase is nearly always to be translated by the preposition 'chez' (ché or chéz) followed by the name of the possessor. 'Chez' means *at the home of* or *to the home of*. Ex.: *they are at Mr. Smith's* = ils sont chez M. Smith; *she was going to her mother's* = elle allait chez sa mère. Similarly, *I am coming from my father's* = je viens de chez mon père.<sup>1</sup>

c. In English a noun is often used adjectively, and stands before the word it modifies; in French a noun so used *follows* the word it

---

<sup>1</sup> *At or to my home, at or to your home, etc.*, are rendered by 'chez' with a disjunctive personal pronoun: *he comes to our house* = il vient chez nous; *she is at home* = elle est chez elle; *I dined with him* = j'ai diné chez lui.

qualifies, and is generally connected with it by 'de': *a gold piece* = une pièce d'or; *an excursion train* = un train de plaisir; *the Paris road* = le chemin de Paris; *the Avignon bridge* = le pont d'Avignon; *Bordeaux wines* = les vins de Bordeaux; *Grand Army Avenue* = l'avenue de la Grande-Armée. Sometimes the 'de' is omitted, especially before the name of a person: *the Gouin method* = la méthode Gouin; *some Chassepot guns* = des fusils Chassepot; *Washington Street* = la rue Washington; *the Eiffel tower* = la tour Eiffel.

### Number.

**130.** French nouns form their plural by adding silent *s* to the singular: *head, heads* = tête, têtes (tèèt); *hand, hands* = main, mains (mè); *foot, feet* = pied, pieds (pyé).

The following special cases are to be noted:—

(1) Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* are invariable: *arm, arms* = bras, bras (bra); *voice, voices* = voix, voix (vwa); *nose, noses* = nez, nez (né).

(2) Nouns ending in *eau* or *eu* add silent *x* instead of *s*: *hat, hats* = chapeau, chapeaux (cha-pó); *hair, hairs* = cheveu, cheveux (chvö); *vow, vows* = vœu, vœux (vö).

(3) Nouns ending in *al* change these letters to *aux* (ó) for the plural: *horse, horses* = cheval (chval), chevaux (chvó).

(4) A few nouns have irregular plurals; the commonest are:—

|                  |                                |                                  |
|------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>ancestor</i>  | <b>aïeul</b> (a-yël)           | <b>aïeux</b> (a-yö) <sup>1</sup> |
| <i>ball</i>      | <b>bal</b> (bal)               | <b>bals</b> (bal)                |
| <i>jewel</i>     | <b>bijou</b> (bi-ju)           | <b>bijoux</b> (bi-ju)            |
| <i>fellow</i>    | <b>bonhomme</b> (bò-nòm)       | <b>bonshommes</b> (bò-zòm)       |
| <i>pebble</i>    | <b>caillou</b> (ka-yu)         | <b>cailloux</b> (ka-yu)          |
| <i>carnival</i>  | <b>carnaval</b> (kar-na-val)   | <b>carnavals</b> (kar-na-val)    |
| <i>cabbage</i>   | <b>chou</b> (chu)              | <b>choux</b> (chu)               |
| <i>sky</i>       | <b>ciel</b> (syèl)             | <b>cieux</b> (syö) <sup>2</sup>  |
| <i>knee</i>      | <b>genou</b> (jnu)             | <b>genoux</b> (jnu)              |
| <i>gentleman</i> | <b>gentilhomme</b> (já-ti-yòm) | <b>gentilshommes</b> (já-ti-zòm) |

<sup>1</sup> When 'aïeul' means *grandfather*, it has a plural 'aïeuls' (a-yël).

<sup>2</sup> When used with certain special meanings, 'ciel,' 'ciel,' and 'travail' have regular plurals.

|                  |                           |                                      |
|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>plaything</i> | <b>joujou</b> (ju-ju)     | <b>joujoux</b> (ju-ju)               |
| <i>eye</i>       | <b>œil</b> (ëÿ)           | <b>yeux</b> (yö) <sup>1</sup>        |
| <i>work</i>      | <b>travail</b> (tra-vaay) | <b>travaux</b> (tra-vó) <sup>1</sup> |

*a.* The name of a letter or number and any part of speech other than a noun, when used substantively, can take no plural ending: *two a's* = deux a; *these r's* = ces un; *but's and if's* = les mais et les si.

*b.* Foreign nouns used in French form their plural in various ways: words that have become really French usually take the French ending; of the less naturalized words, some are invariable and some retain their foreign plural. Ex.: *une lady*, des *ladys*; *un five o'clock*, des *five o'clock*; *un gentleman*, des *gentlemen*.

*c.* Compound nouns containing a hyphen make their plural in several ways: if the compound consists of a noun and an adjective, both parts take the plural ending; if it consists of a noun modified by a prepositional phrase, only the noun is made plural; if it is not made up in either of these ways, its plural must be learned by observation. Ex.: *brothers-in-law* = des *beaux-frères*, *cauliflowers* = des *choux-fleurs*, *grandfathers* = des *grands-pères*; *rainbows* = des *arcs-en-ciel*, *masterpieces* = des *chefs-d'œuvre*; *an afternoon*, *afternoons* = *une après-midi*, les *après-midi*; *a basement*, *two basements* = *un sous-sol*, deux *sous-sols*; *a postage stamp*, *some postage stamps* = *un timbre-poste*, des *timbres-poste*.

**131.** Generally speaking, the plural is used in French as it is in English.

*a.* In treating collectively of a number of persons or things, the French generally use a singular noun to designate something that belongs to every member of the group. Ex.: *they all raised their right hands* = ils levèrent tous la main droite; *these creatures have very long tails* = ces bêtes ont la queue très longue; *they cut off the heads of the prisoners* = on coupa la tête aux prisonniers; *the tops of all these mountains are covered with snow* = toutes ces montagnes ont le sommet couvert de neige.

*b.* French proper nouns generally have the singular form when they are used simply to denote two or more persons of the same name: *the two Balzacs* = les deux Balzac.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 140, n. 2.

## Gender.

**132.** All French nouns are either masculine or feminine.

*a.* The following words and phrases are masculine when used as indefinite pronouns in the senses mentioned below:—

|                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| autre chose, <i>something else</i>   | quelque chose, <i>something</i> |
| grand' chose, <i>something great</i> | quelqu'un, <i>somebody</i>      |
| personne, <i>nobody</i>              | rien, <i>nothing</i>            |

(1) The names of male persons and of distinctively male animals are masculine: *a man* = un homme; *my father* = mon père; *her little boy* = son petit garçon; *this bull* = ce taureau; *the cock crows* = le coq chante.

*a.* The following nouns and some others, though often applied to men, are feminine:—

|                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| connaissance, <i>acquaintance</i> | personne, <i>person</i>     |
| créature, <i>creature</i>         | recrue, <i>recruit</i>      |
| dupe, <i>dupe</i>                 | sentinelle, <i>sentinel</i> |
| pratique, <i>customer</i>         | victime, <i>victim</i>      |

(2) The names of female persons and of distinctively female animals are feminine: *a woman* = une femme; *my mother* = ma mère; *her little girl* = sa petite fille; *this cow* = cette vache; *the hen lays eggs* = la poule pond des œufs.

*a.* The following nouns and some others, though occasionally applied to women, are always masculine:—

|                         |                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| docteur, <i>doctor</i>  | philosophe, <i>philosopher</i> |
| écrivain, <i>writer</i> | poète, <i>poet</i>             |
| médecin, <i>doctor</i>  | sculpteur, <i>sculptor</i>     |
| orateur, <i>orator</i>  | soldat, <i>soldier</i>         |
| peintre, <i>painter</i> | témoin, <i>witness</i>         |

(3) The gender of all other nouns must be learned by observation: *a nose* = un nez, *a mouth* = une bouche; *some bread* = du pain, *some meat* = de la viande; *my knife* = mon couteau, *my fork* = ma fourchette; *the palace* = le palais, *the house* = la mai-

son ; *a tree* = un arbre, *a vine* = une vigne ; *the salmon* = le saumon, *the trout* = la truite ; *a toad* = un crapaud, *a frog* = une grenouille ; *this crow* = ce corbeau, *this lark* = cette alouette ; *the rat* = le rat, *the mouse* = la souris ; *this fire* = ce feu, *this water* = cette eau ; *the sky* = le ciel, *the earth* = la terre ; *a mind* = un esprit, *a soul* = une âme ; *this slavery* = cet esclavage, *this liberty* = cette liberté.<sup>1</sup>

*a.* A few nouns denoting human beings may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the person represented. The commonest are : —

|                          |                           |                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| artiste, <i>artist</i>   | concierge, <i>janitor</i> | enfant, <i>child</i>  |
| camarade, <i>comrade</i> | élève, <i>pupil</i>       | esclave, <i>slave</i> |

*b.* Many nouns denoting persons or animals have two forms, one for each gender. Some of the most important are : —

|                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ami, amie, <i>friend</i>              | époux, épouse, <i>spouse</i>          |
| chat, chatte, <i>cat</i>              | loup, louve, <i>wolf</i>              |
| citoyen, citoyenne, <i>citizen</i>    | marchand, marchande, <i>seller</i>    |
| compagnon, compagne, <i>companion</i> | mulet, mule, <i>mule</i>              |
| cousin, cousine, <i>cousin</i>        | musicien, musicienne, <i>musician</i> |
| cuisinier, cuisinière, <i>cook</i>    | ours, ourse, <i>bear</i>              |
| ennemi, ennemie, <i>enemy</i>         | paysan, paysanne, <i>peasant</i>      |

Most nouns in *-eur* derived from French verbs have a feminine in *-euse*. Ex. : *a singer* = un chanteur, une chanteuse ; *a dancer* = un danseur, une danseuse. Nouns designating inhabitants of countries, cities, or other places form their feminine in the same way as adjectives. Ex. : *a Spaniard* = un Espagnol, une Espagnole ; *a Parisian* = un Parisien, une Parisienne : *a villager* = un villageois, une villageoise.

---

<sup>1</sup> Most French nouns are derived from Latin words. Pupils who have studied Latin will find that, in general, nouns which are masculine or neuter in Latin are masculine in French, while those which are feminine in Latin keep their gender in French. The most important exceptions to this rule are French abstract nouns in *-eur*, nearly all of which are feminine: *color* = 'la couleur,' *favor* = 'la faveur'; but 'l'honneur,' *honor*, and 'le labeur,' *labor*, are masculine.





# INDEX.

[The numbers refer to paragraphs. Names of topics are printed in heavy-faced type, individual French words in ordinary Roman letters, and English words in italics.]

- À**: 17, *b*; 56, *a*; 57; 57, (1), (2), (3), (4); 81; 83; 83, *a*; 85, (1); 90, (1); 93; 106.
- Contraction**: 81; 85, (1); 90, (1); 106.
- Use**: 17, *b*; 56, *a*; 57; 57, (1), (2), (3), (4); 83; 83, *a*; 93.
- Accent**: 7-8.
- Accents**: 12; 12, *a*, *b*; 29, *c*, *d*; 37, *B*, (1); 115, (2).
- Adjectives**: 39, (3); 39, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*; 114-128.
- Form**: 114-116; 127, (1), *a*; 128, (1).
- Agreement**: 114; 114, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*; 117-120; 127, (1), *a*.
- Position**: 121-122; 126.
- Comparison**: 121, *a*; 123-125.
- Adjective Phrases**: 39, (3); 39, *b*, *c*, *d*; 100, *e*; 120, *b*; 122, (1), *a*; 122, (2), *d*; 126; 126, (1), (2), (3), (4); 126, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*, *j*; 127, (1), *e*.
- Quantity**: 126, *all*.
- Numerals**: 122, (1), *a*; 127-128.
- Possessive Adjectives**: *see Possessives*.
- Interrogative Adjectives**: *see Interrogatives*.
- Demonstrative Adjectives**: *see Demonstratives*.
- Adverbs**: 41, *c*; 75; 122, (2), *d*; 122, (3), *c*; 126, *b*.
- Adverbs of Negation**: 39-44.
- Adverbs of Place**: *see Ci*, *En*, *Là*, *Voici*, *Voilà*, *Y*.
- Comparison**: 123, *e*; 124, *b*.
- Position**: 41, *c*; 122, (2), *d*.
- Agreement**: —
- Adjectives**: *see Adjectives*.
- Articles**: *see Articles*.
- Participles**: 18, *b*, *c*, *d*; 86.
- Verbs**: *see Personal Endings*.
- Aller**: 33, (1); 50, (8).
- Alphabet**: 12.
- And (before infinitive)**: 17, *c*.
- Any**: —
- Adjective**: 109-111.
- Pronoun**: *see En*.
- Articles**: —
- Definite**: 80; 80, *a*, *c*, *d*; 81; 85, (1); 90, (1); 104-111; 112, *b*, *c*; 123; 123, (1), (2), (3); 123, *a*, *b*, *d*, *e*, *f*; 126, (1); 126, *e*, *f*; 127, (1), *e*.
- Form**: 105-106.
- Use**: 105, *a*, *b*; 107-111; 112, *b*, *c*; 123; 123, (1), (2); 123, *a*, *b*, *d*, *e*, *f*; 126, (1); 126, *e*, *f*; 127, (1), *e*; 127, (4), *b*.
- Partitive**: 109-111.
- Indefinite**: 80, *b*; 91, *a*; 109, *a*; 112-113; 127, (2), *d*; 127, (4); 127, (4), *b*.
- Aspirate**: *see H*.
- Assez**: 126, (4); 126, *a*, *b*.
- Aucun**: 39, (2), (3); 39, *a*, *e*; 40, *B*; 41, *B*; 41, *B*, (3).
- Aussi**: 125, *b*.
- Autant**: 125, *c*; 126, (4); 126, *a*, *b*.
- Autre chose**: 132, *a*.

**Auxiliaries:—**

**Compound Tenses:** 21; 21, *a*;  
33, (2), (3); 34; 50, (2).

**Passive:** 16; 33, (3); 35; 50, (1).

**Mood:** 51–55.

**Avoir:** 21; 21, *a*; 33, (2); 34; 50,  
(2).

**Beaucoup:** 41, *c*; 124, *e, f*; 126, (4);  
126, *a, b*.

**Bien:** 124, *e*; 126, *c*.

**Both:** 42, *b*; 126, *j*.

**Ça:** 103, *note*.

**Can:** *see Auxiliaries of Mood*.

**Capitals:** 14.

**Ce (*adj.*):** 97; 98; 98, *a*.

**Ce (*pron.*):** 37, *B*, (2); 37, *C*, (2);  
48; 63; 63, *A, B*; 63, *B*, (1),  
(2); 63, *a*; 74, *b*; 87; 87, *a*,  
*b*; 94; 95; 95, *a, b, c, d, e*;  
103, *A*; 103, *A*, (1), (2);  
103, *c*; 113, (1), *b*.

**Ce = *he, she, they*:** 63, *a*; 113,  
(1), *b*.

**Ce = *it*:** 48; 63; 63, *A, B*; 63,  
*B*, (1), (2); 74, *b*; 103, *c*.

**Ce = *that*:** 103, *A*; 103, *A*, (1),  
(2).

**Ce qui, ce que, ce dont:** 87; 87,  
*a, b*; 95; 95, *a, b, e*.

**Est-ce que:** 37, *B*, (2); 37, *C*, (2);  
94; 95; 95, *c, d*.

**Ceci:** 103; 103, *d, e*.

**Cedilla:** 12; 29, *a*.

**Cela:** 103; 103, *d, e*.

**Chaque:** 109, *d*.

**Chez:** 129, *b*.

**Ci:** 98; 98, *a*; 102.

**Combien:** 126, (4); 126, *a, b*.

**Comme:** 121, *a*; 125, *b*.

**Comparison:** *see Adjectives*.

**Compound Tenses:** 17; 18; 21;  
21, *a, b, c, d*; 26; 26, *iii*; 34;  
41; 41, *c*; 50, (2); 55.

**Condition:** 19; 19, *b, c*; 20, *b*; 21;  
50, (3), *note*.

**Conditional:** 19; 19, *b*; 20; 21;  
26, *i*, (2); 32, *a*; 50, (3); 55.

**Conjugation:** 25–49.

**First:** 29; 29, *a, b, c, d*.

**Second:** 30.

**Third:** 31.

**Irregular:** 25–26; 32–33.

**Passive:** 35.

**Interrogative:** 38; 44.

**Negative:** 43; 44.

**Reflexive:** 47.

**Impersonal:** 49.

*See Auxiliaries of Mood,*

**Compound Tenses,**

**Derivation of Tenses,**

**Personal Endings,**

**Principal Parts.**

**Conjunctive Pronouns:** *see Per-*  
**sonal Pronouns.**

**Consonants:** 4; 4, *a, b, c, d, e*; 5;  
5, *a, b, c, d*; 6; 6, (1), (2),  
(3); 6, *a*; 12; 13; 115.

**Contraction:** *see À and De*.

**Could:** *see Auxiliaries of Mood*.

**Dates:** 128, *a*.

**Davantage:** 124, *e*.

**De:** 17, *b*; 39, (3); 39, *b, c, d*; 40,  
*A*, (2); 41, *B*, (2); 56, *a*,  
*note*; 81; 85, (1); 86, *c*; 90,  
(1); 100, *e*; 106; 108, (2),  
*note* 2; 109–111; 112, *a*; 114,  
*d*; 117, *d*; 120, *b*; 125, *a, c*;  
126; 126, (1), (2), (3), (4);  
126, *c, d, e, f, h*; 127, (4), *b*;  
129; 129, *a, b, c*.

**De = *than*:** 125, *a*.

**D'où:** 86, *c*.

**Contraction:** 81; 85, (1); 90,  
(1); 106.

**Elision:** 39, *d*; 111, *a*.

**Partitive:** 109–111.

**Possessive:** 129; 129, *a, b*.

**Definite Article:** *see* **Articles.**

**Demi:** 126, *f.*

**Demonstratives:** 56, *c*; 96-103; 122, (1), *a*; 129, *b.*

**Adjectives:** 96-98; 122, (1), *a.*

**Pronouns:** 96; 96, *a*; 99-103; 129, *b.*

**Derivation of Tenses:** 25-26.

**Descriptive Past:** 20; 20, *a, b*; 21, *d*; 25; 26, ii., (3); 50, (5).

**Devoir:** 32; 51, (2); 52; 52, (2).

**Diæresis:** 12; 32, *Haïr, note.*

**Disjunctive Pronouns:** *see* **Personal Pronouns.**

**Do:** 20, *a*; 36; 50, (6); 55.

**Dont:** 85; 86, (1); 86, *a*; 87.

**E (after g):** 29, *a.*

**Elision:** 5, *a*; 6, (3), *a*; 19, *c, note* 3; 48, *a*; 60; 68, *a*; 85; 90; 105; 111, *a*; 125; 126, (2).

**Emphasis:** 7-8; 57, (4); 58; 74, (2); 74, *a, b*; 98.

**En (adv.):** 46; 47, (2); 66; 66, *b*; 68; 68, *A*; 69; 69, *A*; 75.

**Position:** 68; 68, *A*; 69; 69, *A.*

**En (prep.):** 18, *e, f*; 108, (2), *note* 1; 108, (5); 114, *d.*

**En (pron.):** 39, (2); 39, *a*; 40, *A, B*; 40, *A, (1)*; 41; 42, (1); 44; 46; 49, *b*; 65; 65, (1); 65, *a*; 68; 68, *A*; 68, *a*; 69; 69, *A*; 111, (1), *c.*

**Position:** 49, *b*; 68; 68, *A*; 69; 69, *A.*

**Entendre:** 18, *h, i*; 68, *b.*

**Est-ce que:** *see* *Ce.*

**Et:** 6; 42, *b*; 119, (2), *a*; 127, (2), *d*; 127, (3), *note*; 127, (4).

**Être:** 16; 21; 21, *a*; 33, (3); 34; 35; 50, (1), (2); 56, *a*; 63, *B, (2)*; 74, *b*; 83.

**Faire:** 16, *b*; 18, *i*; 33, (4); 50, (7); 61, *a*; 68, *b.*

**Falloir:** 33, (5); 40, *a*; 51, (2); 53; 53, (1), (2); 53, *b*; 54; 54, *a*; 55, *a.*

**Feminine:** *see* **Gender.**

**Future:** 20; 20, *c*; 25; 26, i., (1); 32, *a*; 50, (3); 55.

**Future Anterior:** *see* **Future Perfect.**

**Future Perfect:** 21; 34.

**Gender:** *see* **Adjectives, Articles, Nouns, Participles, Pronouns.**

**Grand' chose:** 132, *a.*

**Guère:** 39-44.

**H:** 5, *a*; 6; 6, *a*; 97; 117, *e*; 123, (1); 127, (1), *c, d.*

**Half:** 126, *f.*

**Hyphen:** 37, *B, (1)*; 37, *C, (1)*; 130, *c.*

**Il (= there):** 63, *c.*

**Il y a:** 49.

**Imperative:** 19; 19, *a*; 20; 21; 24; 26, ii., (2); 26, iv., (2); 46.

**Imperfect:** *see* **Descriptive Past.**

**Impersonal Verbs:** 48-49; 53; 54.

**Indefinite Article:** *see* **Articles.**

**Indefinite Pronouns:** 16, *a*; 42, *c*; 64; 64, *a, b*; 65; 65, (1); 65, *a*; 91, *b*; 95, *f*; 99; 99, *b*; 100, *e*; 103, *all*; 117, *d*; 124, *c*; 126, *a, h, i.*

**Indicative:** 19; 19, *a*; 20; 21.

**Indirect Object:** 46; 56-58; 69, *A.*

**Indirect Questions:** 84, *b, note*; 94; 95; 95, *a, b, e.*

**Infinitive:** 17; 17, *a, b, c*; 18, *e*; 26; 28; 40; 41, *c*; 52; 53; 53, (1).

**Interrogation:** 36-38; 44.

**Interrogatives:** 37, A; 84, *b*; 89-95; 122, (1), *a*.

**Adjectives:** 89-91; 122, (1), *a*.

**Pronouns:** 89-90; 92-95.

**Intonation:** 11.

**Inversion:** 37, B, (1); 37, C, (1), (3); 37, *a, b*.

**Irregular Verbs:** 32-33.

*It:* 48; 56; 62-63; 65; 65, (1); 65, *a*.

*Its:* 76; 78; 80, *d*; 81.

**Jamais:** 39-44.

*Là:* 66, *a*; 98; 98, *a*; 102.

*Laisser:* 16, *b*; 68, *b*.

*Le (= so):* 63, *e*.

**Letters:** 12-15.

**Liaison:** 6; 6, (1), (2), (3); 6, *a*; 60; 64; 65; 71; 78; 85; 90, (2); 97; 105; 106; 109, *a*; 112; 116; 116, (4); 123, (1); 123, *d*; 124, *b*; 127, (1), *b*; 127, (2), *b*; 129, *b*.

*L'un and L'autre:* 42, *c*; 46, *b*; 126, *j*.

**Masculine:** *see Gender.*

*May:* *see Auxiliaries of Mood.*

*Même:* 74, *a*; 98, *b*; 100, *d*; 103, *f*.

*Might:* *see Auxiliaries of Mood.*

**Modal Auxiliaries:** *see Auxiliaries of Mood.*

*Moindre:* 124, *a*.

*Moins:* 123, *d*; 124, *c*; 125, *a*; 126, (4); 126, *a, b*.

*Moitié:* 126, *f*.

**Mood:** 17-19; 51-55.

*Must:* *see Auxiliaries of Mood.*

**Narrative Past:** 20; 20, *a, b*; 21, *b*; 25; 26; 26, *v.*, (1).

**Nasal Vowels:** 2, *b*; 3, *f*; 6, (2); 115.

**Ne:** 39-44.

**Negation:** 39-44.

*Ni:* 42, *b*; 110, *a*.

*Non:* 42, (2); 42, *a*.

*Non pas:* 42, (2).

**Nouns:** 57; 62; 79; 114, *c, d*; 120, *a*; 122, (2), *c*; 127, *a*; 129-132.

**Gender:** 132, *all*.

**Number:** 130-131.

**Possessive:** 129; 129, *a, b*.

*Nul:* 39, (3); 39, *b, e*; 40, B; 41, B; 41, B, (3).

**Number (verbs):** 22-24.

**Number:** *see Adjectives, Articles, Nouns, Participles, Pronouns.*

**Numbers:** *see Adjectives.*

**Numerals:** *see Adjectives.*

**Object-Pronouns:** *see Personal Pronouns.*

*On:* 16, *a*; 64; 64, *a, b*.

*One:* 100; 100, *b, c, e*; 120, *b*.

*One (numeral):* *see Adjectives.*

*One (= people):* *see On.*

*Ou:* 42, *b*; 119, (2), *b*.

*Où:* 86, *c*.

*Ought:* *see Auxiliaries of Mood.*

*Oui:* 42, *a*.

*Par:* 112, *b*.

**Participles:** 18; 18, *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i*; 26; 26, *ii, iii.*; 32; 33; 34; 35; 86; 115, *a, b*; 122, (2), *b*.

**Agreement:** 18, *b, c, d*; 86.

**Form:** 18; 18, *a*; 32; 33; 115, *a, b*.

**Position:** 41; 41, A, B; 41, *c*; 122, (2), *b*.

**Use:** 18, *e, f, g, h, i*; 34; 35.

**Partitive Article:** 109-111.

*Pas:* 39-44.

**Passive:** 16; 16, *a, b*; 35; 50, (1); 55; 64, *a*.

- Past** (*indicative*): *see* **Descriptive Past and Narrative Past**.
- Past** (*subjunctive*): 19, *c*; 20; 20, *d*; 26, *v.*, (2).
- Past Anterior**: *see* **Past Perfect**.
- Past Definite**: *see* **Narrative Past**.
- Past Indefinite**: *see* **Present Perfect**.
- Past Perfect**: 21; 21, *c, d*; 34.
- Perfect**: *see* **Present Perfect**.
- Person** (*verbs*): 22-26.
- Personal Endings** (*verbs*): 22-26.
- Personal Pronouns**: 16, *a*; 23; 37, *B*; 37, *B*, (1), (2); 40, *A, B*; 40, *A*, (1); 41; 46; 48; 48, *a*; 53; 53, (1); 56-75; 79, *c*; 80; 80, *a, b, c, d*; 83; 101; 106, *a*; 111, (1), *c*; 129, *b*, *note*.
- Conjunctive**: 60-70; 80; 80, *a, b, c, d*; 106, *a*; 111, (1), *c*.
- Disjunctive**: 71-75; 79, *c*; 83; 129, *b*, *note*.
- Position**: 67-69; 73.
- Personne**: 39-44; 132, *a*; 132, (1), *a*.
- Peu**: 126, (4); 126, *a, b*.
- Phonetic Spelling**: 1; 2; 4.
- Plupart**: 126, *e*.
- Pluperfect**: *see* **Past Perfect**.
- Plural**: *see* **Number**.
- Plus**: 39-44; 107, *c*; 121, *a*; 123; 123, (1), (3); 123, *f*; 124, *c*; 125, *a*; 126, (4); 126, *a, b*.
- Point**: 39-44.
- Position**: *see* **Adjectives, Adverbs, Negation, Participles, Personal Pronouns, Prepositions**.
- Possessives**: 76-83; 122, (1), *a*.  
**Adjectives**: 76-80; 122, (1), *a*.  
**Pronouns**: 76-77; 81-83.
- Potential Mood**: *see* **Auxiliaries of Mood**.
- Pour**: 17, *b*.
- Pouvoir**: 33, (6); 51, (1); 52; 52, (1); 55, *a*.
- Prepositions**: *see* **À, Chez, De, En, Par, Pour, Sans**.
- Position**: 85, *b*; 89, *a*.
- Present**: 20; 20, *a, c, d*; 21, *d*; 25; 26; 26, *ii.*, (1), (2), (4); 26, *iv.*, (1), (2); 32, *b*.
- Present Perfect**: 21; 21, *b, d*; 34.
- Preterit**: *see* **Narrative Past**.
- Principal Parts**: 26; 28.
- Progressive Form**: 20, *a*; 50, (4); 55.
- Pronouns**: *see* **Demonstratives, Indefinite Pronouns, Interrogatives, Personal Pronouns, Possessives, Relative Pronouns**.
- Pronunciation**: 1-11; 12, *a, b*.
- Quantity** (*expressions of*): *see* **Adjective Phrases**.
- Quantity** (*vowel*): 9-10.
- Que** (*conj. or adv.*): 39-44; 84, *a*; 91, *b*; 95, *f, h*; 121, *a*; 125; 125, *b, c*; 126, *d*.
- Que** (*pron.*): *see* **Interrogatives and Relative Pronouns**.
- Quelque**: 109, *a, b*; 117, *d*; 126, *i*.
- Quelque chose**: 117, *d*; 132, *a*.
- Quelqu'un**: 126, *h, i*; 132, *a*.
- Questions**: *see* **Interrogation and Interrogatives**.  
**Indirect**: *see* **Indirect Questions**.
- R**: 4, *a*.
- Reciprocal Pronouns**: *see* **Reflexive Pronouns**.
- Reciprocal Verbs**: *see* **Reflexive Verbs**.
- Reflexive Pronouns**: 45-47; 57, (2); 60; 68-69; 72; 74, *a*.
- Reflexive Verbs**: 45-47.
- Regular Verbs**: 28-31.

**Relative Pronouns:** 18, *g*; 74, *b*;  
84-88.  
**Rien:** 39-44; 117, *d*; 132, *a*.  
**Rounded Vowels:** 2, *a*.

**Sans:** 109, *a*; 110, *a*; 112, *a*.  
**Savoir:** 33, (7); 50, (10).  
**Se:** 45-47; 57, (2); 60; 68-69.  
**Shall:** *see* **Future and Auxiliaries of Mood.**

**Should:** *see* **Conditional and Auxiliaries of Mood.**

**Si** (*if*): 19, *c*, *note*.

**Si** (*so*): 112, *d*; 125, *b*.

**Si** (*yes*): 42, *a*.

**Singular:** *see* **Number.**

**Soi:** 72; 74, *a*.

**Some** (*adj.*): 109-111.

**Some** (*pron.*): *see* **En** (*pron.*).

**Spelling:** 3, *a, b, c, d, e, f*; 5, *a, b, c, d*; 12-14.

**Subjunctive:** 19; 19, *c*; 20; 21; 26, *ii.*, (4); 26, *v.*, (2); 41, *a, b*; 53; 53, (2); 91, *b*; 95, *f*.

**T** (*inserted*): 37, **B**, (1); 37, **C**, (1).

**Tant:** 41, *c*; 125, *c*; 126, (4); 126, *a, b*.

**Tel:** 112, *d*.

**Tenir:** 33, (8).

**Tense:** 17; 18; 20-21; 25-28; 34; 53, (2).

**Than:** 125; 125, *a*.

**To** (*with infin.*): 17, *a, b, c*.

**Tout:** 41, *c*; 87, *b*; 109, *d*; 116, (5); 116, (5), *a*; 117, *e*; 121, *b*; 126, *g, j*.

**Adverb:** 117, *e*.

**Position:** 41, *c*.

**Très:** 123, *c*.

**Trop:** 41, *c*; 126, (4); 126, *a, b*.

**Tu:** 23; 60.

**Venir:** 33, (9); 50, (11).

**Verbs:** 16-55. *See* **Auxiliaries, Compound Tenses, Conjugation, Derivation of Tenses, Impersonal Verbs, Mood, Number, Passive, Person, Personal Endings, Principal Parts, Reflexive Verbs, Tense.**

**Voice:** *see* **Passive.**

**Voici:** 63, *b*; 84, *b, note*; 103, **A**; 103, **A**, (3).

**Voilà:** 63, *b*; 84, *b, note*; 95, *b*; 103, **A**; 103, **A**, (3).

**Voir:** 18, *h, i*; 32.

**Vouloir:** 33, (10); 50, (9); 51, (3); 52; 52, (3); 55, *a*.

**Vous:** 23; 60; 71.

**Vowels:** 2; 2, *a, b, c, d*; 3; 3, *a, b, c, d, e, f*; 6, (2); 6, *a*; 9-10; 12; 12, *a, b*.

**Will:** *see* **Future and Auxiliaries of Mood.**

**Would:** *see* **Conditional and Auxiliaries of Mood.**

**Y** (*adv. and pron.*): 40, **A, B**; 41; 46; 49, (1), (2), (3); 49, *a, b*; 66; 66, *a, b*; 68; 68, **A**; 69; 69, **A**; 75.

**Position:** 49, *b*; 68; 68, **A**; 69; 69, **A**.

Appendix I

FRENCH LESSONS  
AND  
EXERCISES



First Year's Course for High Schools

## PREFACE.

---

THESE lessons and exercises are to be used, in schools, with my *Short French Grammar*, during a first year's course in French. I mean to construct at least one more set of the same grade, in order that the work may be varied from year to year. There are a hundred lessons and twenty exercises — that is to say, materials for three recitations a week during forty weeks. Classes that have French four times a week can use profitably a part or the whole of the extra hour in oral or written work based on their reading-book. Most of the lessons have been made very short, so that at least fifteen or twenty minutes of every recitation hour may be left for translation.

The lessons consist of references to the *Grammar*. The numbers indicate paragraphs; they are not intended to include any detached subdivisions that are not expressly mentioned, but they do cover all tables, paradigms, and examples. Numbers in heavy-faced type represent portions that are to be *thoroughly studied*; the others stand for paragraphs that should be carefully *read*. The teacher would do well to go over each lesson with the pupils beforehand, pronouncing for them all the French words, and calling their attention especially to the examples.

The exercises, which illustrate the grammatical points discussed in the preceding lessons, are based on a French story (pages 1 to 10 next following), a selection from *Sur l'Eau*, by Guy de Maupassant. This text is printed both in ordinary and phonetic spelling, and is provided with an interlinear translation and notes; it is to be used for practice in pronunciation and for grammatical analysis. I hope the exercises may prove to be more acceptable, both to teachers and to pupils, than the customary English sentences.



# FRENCH LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

---

## FRENCH TEXT.

[When several English words are required to render one French word, and when the order of words in a phrase cannot be preserved in translation, the words of the English interlinear version are connected by hyphens. Words that are superfluous in English are enclosed in parentheses. A list of French verbs and verbal forms is to be found at the end of this text.]

1. Je pris le train de quatre heures<sup>1</sup> pour aller dîner avec un  
*I took the four-o'clock-train to go to-dine with a*  
ami dans la principauté de Monaco.<sup>2</sup> Je voudrais avoir le loisir  
*friend in the principality of Monaco. I should-like to-have the leisure*  
de parler longuement de cet État surprenant,<sup>3</sup> moins<sup>4</sup> grand qu'un  
*to speak at-length of this surprising-state, not-so big as a*  
village de France,<sup>5</sup> mais où l'on trouve<sup>6</sup> un souverain absolu,<sup>3</sup>  
*French-village, but where you-find an absolute-sovereign,*  
des évêques, une étiquette plus cérémonieuse que celle de feu  
*(some) bishops, an etiquette more ceremonious than that of the-late*  
Louis XIV, des principes d'autorité plus despotiques que ceux  
*Louis XIV., (some) principles of authority more despotic than those*  
de Guillaume de Prusse,<sup>7</sup> joints à une tolérance magnifique<sup>3</sup> pour  
*of William of Prussia, joined to a magnificent-tolerance for*  
les vices de l'humanité, dont vivent<sup>8</sup> le souverain, les ministres,  
*the vices of (the) humanity, on-which live the sovereign, the ministers,*  
l'armée, la magistrature, tout le monde.<sup>9</sup>  
*the army, the magistrates, everybody.*

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *train of four hours.*

<sup>2</sup> The tiny principality of Monaco is an independent state, situated on the southern shore of France, near Nice. It contains about eight square miles, and has some 10,000 inhabitants. Not far from the town of Monaco (3000 inhabitants) is the Casino of Monte Carlo, a famous gambling establishment.

<sup>3</sup> Notice that French adjectives very often follow their nouns.

<sup>4</sup> *Less.*

<sup>5</sup> *Village of France.*

<sup>6</sup> *One finds.*

<sup>7</sup> The present emperor of Germany.

<sup>8</sup> 'Dont vivent' may be translated freely, *which support*. The prince and the government of Monaco are supported by the receipts of the Casino.

<sup>9</sup> Literally, *all the world*.

2. Saluons<sup>1</sup> ce bon roi pacifique<sup>2</sup> qui, sans peur des invasions  
*Let-us-do-homage-to this good-peaceful-king, who, without fear of (the) invasions*  
 et des révolutions, règne en paix sur son heureux petit peuple  
*and of (the) revolutions, reigns in quiet over his happy little people,*  
 au milieu des cérémonies d'une cour où sont conservées intactes  
*in-the midst of-the ceremonies of a court where are preserved intact*  
 les traditions des quatre révérences, des vingt-six baisemains, et  
*the traditions of-the four bows, of-the twenty-six hand-kissings, and*  
 de toutes les formules usitées autrefois autour des<sup>3</sup> Grands  
*of all the formulas used of-old in-the-presence-of great*  
 Dominateurs. Ce monarque pourtant n'est point<sup>4</sup> sanguinaire  
*rulers. This monarch, however, is-not-at-all sanguinary*  
 ni vindicatif; et quand il bannit, car il bannit,<sup>5</sup> la mesure  
*nor vindictive; and when he banishes,—for he does-banish,—the punishment*  
 est appliquée avec des ménagements infinis.<sup>6</sup>  
*is inflicted with (some) endless-mitigations.*

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *let us salute*.

<sup>2</sup> 'Bon' = *good*, 'roi' = *king*, 'pacifique' = *peaceful*.

<sup>3</sup> 'Autour de' = *around*; literally, 'autour des' means *around the*.

<sup>4</sup> 'Est' = *is*. 'Ne' ... 'pas' = *not*. 'Ne' ... 'point' = *not at all*. 'Ne' loses its *e* before a vowel sound.

<sup>5</sup> 'Il bannit' means *he banishes, he is banishing, and he does banish*. How shall we say *he is reigning*? Give three translations of 'je bannis' ('je' = *I*).

<sup>6</sup> Freely, 'avec des ménagements infinis' = *most considerately*.

3. En faut-il<sup>1</sup> donner des preuves? Un joueur obstiné, dans  
*(Of-it) must-I give (some) proof(s)? An obstinate-gambler, in*  
 un jour de déveine, insulta le souverain. Il fut expulsé par décret.  
*a day of bad-luck, insulted the sovereign. He was expelled by decree.*  
 Pendant un mois il rôda autour du<sup>2</sup> Paradis défendu, craignant le  
*During a month he prowled around-the forbidden-paradise, fearing the*  
 glaive de l'archange, sous<sup>3</sup> la forme du sabre d'un gendarme. Un  
*sword of the archangel, in the form of-the sabre of a policeman. One*  
 jour enfin il s'enhardit,<sup>4</sup> franchit la frontière, gagne en trente  
*day at-last he takes-courage, crosses the frontier, reaches in thirty*

secondes le cœur du pays, pénètre dans le Casino. Mais soudain  
*seconds the heart-of-the country, penetrates into the Casino. But all-at-once*

un fonctionnaire l'arrête<sup>5</sup> : "N'êtes-vous pas<sup>6</sup> banni, monsieur?"  
*an official stops-him: "Aren't-you banished, sir?"*

"Oui, monsieur, mais je repars<sup>7</sup> par le premier train."  
*"Yes, sir, but I am-going-away-again by the first train."*

"Oh ! en ce cas, fort bien, monsieur, vous pouvez entrer." Et  
*"Oh ! in that case, very well, sir, you may come-in." And*

chaque semaine il revient ; et chaque fois le même fonctionnaire  
*every week he returns; and every time the same official*

lui pose<sup>8</sup> la même question à laquelle il répond de la même façon.  
*asks-him the same question, to which he replies in the same way.*

La justice peut-elle être plus douce<sup>9</sup>?

*Can-justice-be milder?*

<sup>1</sup> 'Il faut' = *it is necessary*; 'faut-il' = *is it necessary?*

<sup>2</sup> See Paragraph 2, note 3. <sup>3</sup> *Under.*

<sup>4</sup> Literally, *emboldens himself*. 'Enhardit' = *emboldens*. 'Se' = *himself*; 'se' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. 'S'enhardir' is a reflexive verb.

<sup>5</sup> 'Arrête' = *stops*. 'Le' = *him*; 'le' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. Notice the position of the pronouns 'se' and 'le.'

<sup>6</sup> See Paragraph 2, note 4. <sup>7</sup> See Paragraph 2, note 5.

<sup>8</sup> 'Pose' = *puts*. 'Lui' = *to him*.

<sup>9</sup> Literally, *(the) justice can it be more mild?* 'Justice' is feminine. 'Peut-elle' = *can she*. Nearly all French adjectives form their comparative by prefixing 'plus' to the positive, and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative: *doux, plus doux, le plus doux*.

4. Mais, une des années dernières,<sup>1</sup> un cas fort grave et tout  
*But a-few-years-ago a case, very grave and entirely*  
 nouveau se produisit<sup>2</sup> dans le royaume. Un assassinat eut lieu.<sup>3</sup>  
*new, presented-itself in the kingdom. A murder occurred.*

La Cour suprême se réunit<sup>4</sup> pour juger ce cas exceptionnel, et le  
*The Supreme Court met to judge this exceptional-case, and the*  
 misérable fut condamné à mort à l'unanimité. Le souverain  
*wretch was condemned to death unanimously. The indignant-*

indigné ratifia l'arrêt. Il ne restait plus qu'à<sup>5</sup> exécuter le  
*sovereign ratified the sentence. Nothing-remained but to execute the*

criminel. Alors une difficulté surgit. Le pays ne possédait ni<sup>6</sup>  
*criminal. Then a difficulty arose. The country possessed-neither*

bourreau ni guillotine.<sup>7</sup> Que faire<sup>8</sup>? Sur<sup>9</sup> l'avis du ministre  
*executioner nor guillotine. What to do? At the suggestion of-the minister*

des affaires étrangères, le prince entama des négociations avec  
*of (the) foreign-affairs, the prince entered-upon (some) negotiations with*  
 le gouvernement français<sup>10</sup> pour obtenir le prêt d'un coupeur de  
*the French-government to obtain the loan of a head-*  
 têtes<sup>11</sup> avec son appareil.  
*chopper with his apparatus.*

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *one of the last years*. 'Dernières' = *last*.

<sup>2</sup> *Produced itself*. See Paragraph 3, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> *Took place*. 'Eut' = *had*.

<sup>4</sup> *United itself*. See Paragraph 3, note 4.

<sup>5</sup> Literally, *there remained now only to*. 'Ne' . . . 'que' = *only*; 'que' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. 'Ne' . . . 'plus' = *no more* or *no longer*. 'Ne' . . . 'plus que' = *no more than* or *nothing more but*. Compare Paragraph 2, note 4.

<sup>6</sup> 'Ne' . . . 'ni' = *neither*.

<sup>7</sup> In France, criminals condemned to death are beheaded with a guillotine.

<sup>8</sup> *Freely, what was to be done?*

<sup>9</sup> *On*.

<sup>10</sup> Notice that French adjectives of nationality begin with small letters.

<sup>11</sup> *Cutter of heads*.

5. De longues délibérations eurent lieu<sup>1</sup> au ministère à Paris.

*(Some) long deliberations took place at-the minister's-office in Paris.*

On répondit<sup>2</sup> enfin en envoyant la note des frais pour déplacement  
*They answered finally by sending the list of-the expenses for moving*  
 des bois et du praticien. Le tout montait à seize mille francs.  
*(of) the wood and (of) the operator. The whole amounted to sixteen thousand francs.*  
 Sa Majesté songea que l'opération lui coûterait<sup>3</sup> bien cher;  
*His Majesty reflected that the operation would-cost-him very dear;*  
 l'assassin ne valait certes pas<sup>4</sup> ce prix. Seize mille francs pour  
*the murderer was-surely-not-worth this price. Sixteen thousand francs for*  
 le cou d'un drôle! Ah! mais non.<sup>5</sup> On adressa alors<sup>6</sup> la  
*the neck of a scoundrel? I-should-think-not! They then-addressed the*  
 même demande au gouvernement italien. Un roi, un frère  
*same request to-the Italian-government. A king, a brother,*  
 ne se montrerait pas<sup>7</sup> sans doute<sup>8</sup> si exigeant qu'une république.  
*would-not-show-himself, certainly, so exacting as a republic.*

<sup>1</sup> Compare Paragraph 4, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> *One replied*. Compare Paragraph 1, note 6.

<sup>3</sup> 'Lui' = *to him*. Compare Paragraph 3, note 8.

<sup>4</sup> 'Valait' = *was worth*. 'Certes' = *surely*. See Paragraph 2, note 4.

<sup>5</sup> *Ah! but no!*

<sup>6</sup> *One addressed then.* Compare Paragraph 1, note 6. French adverbs, unless they begin the sentence, nearly always follow their verbs.

<sup>7</sup> See Paragraph 2, note 4; and Paragraph 3, note 4.

<sup>8</sup> *Without doubt.*

6. Le gouvernement italien envoya un mémoire qui montait à  
*The Italian-government sent an estimate which amounted to*  
 douze mille francs. Douze mille francs! Il faudrait<sup>1</sup> prélever  
*twelve thousand francs. Twelve thousand francs! It would-be-necessary to-levy*  
 un impôt nouveau, un impôt de deux francs par tête d'habitant.<sup>2</sup>  
*a new-tax, a tax of two francs per-capita.*  
 Cela suffirait pour amener des troubles inconnus dans l'État.  
*That would-be-enough to cause (some) unknown-disturbances in the state.*  
 On songea<sup>3</sup> à faire décapiter le gueux<sup>4</sup> par un simple soldat.  
*They thought of having-the-rascal-decapitated by a common soldier.*  
 Mais le général, consulté, répondit en hésitant<sup>5</sup> que ses hommes  
*But the general, on-being-consulted, replied reluctantly that his men*  
 n'avaient peut-être pas<sup>6</sup> une pratique suffisante de l'arme blanche<sup>7</sup>  
*had-not-perhaps enough-practice with the sword*  
 pour s'acquitter<sup>8</sup> d'une tâche demandant une grande expérience  
*to acquit-themselves of a task requiring a vast experience*  
 dans le maniement du sabre.  
*in the use of the sabre.*

<sup>1</sup> See Paragraph 3, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> *By head of inhabitant; that is, for every inhabitant.*

<sup>3</sup> See Paragraph 5, notes 2 and 6. 'On' means *one* or *people*, or *we*, *you*, or *they*, used in an indefinite or a general way. Its verb is always in the third person singular.

<sup>4</sup> Literally, *to make decapitate the rascal.* *To have anything done* is translated by 'faire' with the active infinitive.

<sup>5</sup> *Hesitating.*

<sup>6</sup> 'Avaient' = *had.* See Paragraph 2, note 4.

<sup>7</sup> *White weapon.*

<sup>8</sup> See Paragraph 3, note 4.

7. Alors le prince convoqua de nouveau la Cour suprême et  
*Then the prince assembled once-more the Supreme-Court, and*  
 lui soumit<sup>1</sup> ce cas embarrassant. On délibéra<sup>2</sup> longtemps, sans  
*submitted-to-it this embarrassing-case. They deliberated a-long-while, without*  
 découvrir<sup>3</sup> aucun moyen pratique. Enfin le premier président  
*discovering any practicable-method. At-last the first president*

proposa de commuer la peine de mort en celle de prison  
*proposed to commute the penalty of death to that of imprisonment*  
 perpétuelle, et la mesure fut adoptée. Mais on ne possédait pas de <sup>4</sup>  
*for-life, and the measure was adopted. But they-had-no*  
 prison. Il fallut <sup>5</sup> en <sup>6</sup> installer une, et un geôlier fut nommé,  
*prison. It was-necessary (of them) to-fit-up one, and a jailer was appointed,*  
 qui prit livraison du prisonnier.  
*who took charge of-the prisoner.*

<sup>1</sup> See Paragraph 5, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> See Paragraph 6, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> 'Découvrir' means really *to discover*. In French the infinitive, and not the present participle, is used after all prepositions except 'en.' For an example of the preposition 'en' see the second sentence of Paragraph 5.

<sup>4</sup> For 'on' see Paragraph 6, note 3. 'Ne' . . . 'pas de' = *no*; 'de' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. Compare Paragraph 2, note 4.

<sup>5</sup> Freely, *they had*. See Paragraph 6, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> The pronoun 'en' means *of it* or *of them*: see the beginning of Paragraph 3. 'Il fallut en installer une' = *it was necessary to fit up one (of them)*, that is, *a prison*. Compare the sentence: 'je n'ai pas de frère, mais vous en avez deux' = *I have no brother, but you have two (of them)*, that is, *two brothers*.

8. Pendant six mois tout alla bien. Le captif dormait tout  
*For six months all went well. The captive slept all*  
 le jour sur une paille dans son réduit, et le gardien en <sup>1</sup>  
*(the) day on a straw-mattress in his retreat, and the guardian (of it)*  
 faisait autant <sup>2</sup> sur une chaise devant la porte en regardant <sup>3</sup>  
*did the-same on a chair before the door, (while) watching*  
 passer les voyageurs. Mais le prince est économe, c'est là son  
*the-travellers-pass-by. But the prince is economical—that is (there) his*  
 moindre défaut, et il se fait rendre <sup>4</sup> compte des plus petites  
*least fault—and he has-rendered-to-him an-account-of-the smallest*  
 dépenses accomplies dans son État (la liste n'en est pas longue <sup>5</sup>).  
*expenditures made in his state. The list of-them-is-not-long.*  
 On lui remit donc la note des frais relatifs à la création de  
*They handed-him, then, the bill for-the expenses connected with the creation of*  
 cette fonction nouvelle, à l'entretien de la prison, du prisonnier  
*this new-office, with the keeping of the prison, (of) the prisoner,*  
 et du veilleur. Le traitement de ce dernier grevait lourdement <sup>6</sup>  
*and (of) the watchman. The salary of this latter was-a-heavy-burden-for*  
 le budget du souverain.  
*the finances of-the sovereign.*

<sup>1</sup> See Paragraph 7, note 6.

<sup>2</sup> 'Autant' = *as much*. 'Le gardien en faisait autant' = *the guardian did as much (of it)*, that is, *of sleeping*; in other words, *the guardian slept likewise*.

<sup>3</sup> See Paragraph 7, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> See Paragraph 6, note 4; and Paragraph 3, note 4. 'Se' means here *to himself*.

<sup>5</sup> For 'en' see Paragraph 7, note 6. For 'ne' . . . 'pas' see Paragraph 2, note 4.

<sup>6</sup> *Burdened heavily*.

9. Il fit d'abord la grimace<sup>1</sup>; mais quand il songea que cela pouvait durer toujours (le condamné était jeune), il prévint son ministre de la justice d'avoir à<sup>2</sup> prendre des mesures pour supprimer cette dépense. Le ministre consulta le président du tribunal, et tous deux<sup>3</sup> convinrent qu'on supprimerait<sup>4</sup> la charge de geôlier. Le prisonnier, invité à se garder<sup>5</sup> tout seul, ne pouvait<sup>6</sup> manquer de s'évader,<sup>5</sup> ce qui résoudrait la question à la satisfaction de tous.

*At-first-he-grinned-and-bore-it; but when he reflected that it might last forever (the convict was young), he warned his minister of (the) justice that-he-must take (some) measures to suppress this expense. The minister consulted the Chief-Justice, and both agreed to-do-away-with the office of jailer. The prisoner, when-asked to watch-himself all alone, could-not fail to run-away, which would-solve the problem to the satisfaction of all.*

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *he made first the grimace*, that is, *at first he made up a face*.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, *to have to*.

<sup>3</sup> Literally, *all two*.

<sup>4</sup> Literally, *that one should suppress the office of jailer*, that is, *that the office of jailer should be suppressed*.

<sup>5</sup> Compare Paragraph 3, note 4.

<sup>6</sup> 'Ne' is used here with the sense of 'ne' . . . 'pas.'

10. Le geôlier fut donc rendu à sa famille, et un aide de cuisine<sup>1</sup> du palais resta chargé<sup>2</sup> simplement de porter, matin et soir, la nourriture du coupable. Mais celui-ci ne fit<sup>3</sup>

*The jailer was therefore restored to his family, and a kitchen-hand in-the palace remained with-orders simply to carry, morning and evening, the food of-the culprit. But the-latter did-not-make*

aucune tentative pour reconquérir sa liberté. Or, un jour,  
*any attempt to regain his liberty. Now, one day,*  
 comme on avait négligé de lui fournir<sup>4</sup> ses aliments, on le vit<sup>5</sup>  
*when they had neglected to bring-him his victuals, they saw-him*  
 arriver<sup>6</sup> tranquillement pour les réclamer<sup>7</sup>; et il prit dès lors<sup>8</sup>  
*coming quietly to demand-them; and after-that-he-fell-into*  
 l'habitude, afin d'éviter une course au cuisinier,<sup>9</sup> de venir<sup>10</sup>  
*the habit — in-order to save the-cook-a-journey— of coming*  
 aux heures des repas<sup>11</sup> manger au palais avec les gens de service,<sup>12</sup>  
*at-meal-times to-eat in-the palace with the servants,*  
 dont il devint l'ami.<sup>13</sup>  
*whose friend-he-became.*

<sup>1</sup> *Assistant of kitchen.*

<sup>2</sup> *Charged.*

<sup>3</sup> 'Pas' is not used here, because 'aucune' follows. 'Aucun' or 'aucune' is equivalent to 'pas de': see Paragraph 7, note 4.

<sup>4</sup> *Furnish to him.* See Paragraph 3, note 8.

<sup>5</sup> Paragraph 3, note 5.

<sup>6</sup> *Arrive.*

<sup>7</sup> 'Les' = *them.*

<sup>8</sup> *He took from then.*

<sup>9</sup> *A journey to the cook.*

<sup>10</sup> *To come.* See Paragraph 7, note 3.

<sup>11</sup> *At the hours of the meals.*

<sup>12</sup> *People of service.*

<sup>13</sup> *Of whom he became the friend.*

II. Après le déjeuner, il allait<sup>1</sup> faire un tour, jusqu'à  
*After (the) breakfast he used-to-go and-take a walk, as-far-as*  
 Monte-Carlo. Il entrait<sup>2</sup> parfois au Casino risquer cinq  
*Monte Carlo. He would-go sometimes into-the Casino and-risk five*  
 francs sur le tapis vert.<sup>3</sup> Quand il avait gagné, il s'offrait<sup>4</sup>  
*francs on the green-cloth. When he had won, he would-treat-himself-to*  
 un bon dîner dans un hôtel en renom,<sup>5</sup> puis il revenait dans<sup>6</sup>  
*a good dinner in a hotel of-good-repute; then he would-return to*  
 sa prison, dont il fermait avec soin<sup>7</sup> la porte au dedans. Il  
*his prison, of-which he carefully-fastened the door on-the inside. He*  
 ne découcha pas une seule fois. La situation devenait  
*did-not-stay-out-overnight a single time. The situation was-growing*  
 difficile, non pour le condamné, mais pour les juges. La Cour  
*awkward, not for the convict, but for the judges. The Court*  
 se réunit de nouveau, et il fut décidé qu'on inviterait le criminel<sup>8</sup>  
*met again, and it was decided that-the-criminal-should-be-asked*  
 à sortir des États de Monaco.  
*to go-out of-the States of Monaco.*



<sup>1</sup> 'Il allait' means *he went, he did go, he was going, he used to go, or he would go* in the sense of *he used to go*. Compare Paragraph 2, note 5.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, *he would enter*. Give four other translations of 'il entrerait.'

<sup>3</sup> The gambling table.

<sup>4</sup> Offered himself.

<sup>5</sup> In renown.

<sup>6</sup> Into.

<sup>7</sup> Closed with care.

<sup>8</sup> See Paragraph 9, note 4.

12. Lorsqu'on lui signifiâ cet arrêt, il répondit simplement :

*When they made-known-to-him this decision, he answered simply:*

"Je vous trouve<sup>1</sup> plaisants. Eh bien, qu'est-ce que je deviendrai,  
*"I think-you-are ridiculous. Why, what-is-to-become-*

moi?<sup>2</sup> Je n'ai plus de<sup>3</sup> moyen d'existence. Que voulez-vous<sup>4</sup>  
*of-me? I have-no-longer-any means of subsistence. What do-you-expect*

que je fasse<sup>5</sup>? J'étais condamné à mort. Vous ne m'avez  
*me-to-do? I was condemned to death. You didn't-*

pas exécuté.<sup>6</sup> Je n'ai rien dit.<sup>7</sup> Je suis ensuite condamné à la  
*execute-me. I said-nothing. I am next condemned to (the)*

prison perpétuelle et remis aux mains d'un geôlier. Vous  
*imprisonment for-life, and given into-the hands of a jailer. You*

m'avez enlevé mon gardien. Je n'ai rien dit encore.<sup>8</sup> Aujourd'hui,  
*deprived-me-of my guardian. I said-nothing even-then. To-day*

vous voulez me chasser du pays. Ah! mais non.<sup>9</sup> Je suis  
*you want to-drive-me from-the country. Not-a-bit-of-it! I am*

prisonnier, votre prisonnier, jugé et condamné par vous.  
*a-prisoner, your prisoner, judged and condemned by you.*

J'accomplis<sup>10</sup> ma peine fidèlement. Je reste<sup>10</sup> ici."  
*I shall-undergo my punishment faithfully. I shall-stay here."*

<sup>1</sup> *I find you or I think you.*

<sup>2</sup> *What is it that I shall become, I?*

<sup>3</sup> See Paragraph 4, note 5; and Paragraph 7, note 4.

<sup>4</sup> *Expect-you or do you expect?* See Paragraph 2, note 5.

<sup>5</sup> *That I do.*

<sup>6</sup> 'Me' = *me*; 'me' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. 'Vous avez exécuté' means *you have executed, you executed, or you did execute.*

<sup>7</sup> 'Ne' . . . 'rien' means *nothing or not anything*. Give three translations of 'j'ai dit.'

<sup>8</sup> *Still or again.*

<sup>9</sup> See Paragraph 5, note 5.

<sup>10</sup> The present tense is used here with the sense of the future.

13. La Cour suprême fut atterrée. Le prince eut<sup>1</sup> une  
*The Supreme-Court was prostrated. The prince flew-into a*  
 colère terrible et ordonna de prendre des mesures. On  
*terrible-rage and gave-orders to take (some) measures. They*  
 se remit<sup>2</sup> à délibérer. Alors, il fut décidé qu'on offrirait au  
*began-once-more to deliberate. Then it was decided that they should-offer (to) the*  
 coupable une pension de six cents francs pour aller vivre<sup>3</sup>  
*culprit a pension of six hundred francs to go and-live*  
 à l'étranger. Il accepta. Il a loué un petit enclos à cinq  
*abroad. He accepted. He has hired a little walled-lot (at) five*  
 minutes de l'État de son ancien souverain, et il vit heureux<sup>4</sup>  
*minutes from the State of his former sovereign, and he lives happily*  
 sur sa terre, cultivant quelques légumes et méprisant les potentats.  
*on his land, raising a-few vegetables and despising (the) potentates.*

<sup>1</sup> *Had.*

<sup>2</sup> 'Se mettre à' means *to begin to*; 'se remettre à' is *to begin to again*.

<sup>3</sup> *To go and do something or to come and do something* is translated by 'aller' or 'venir' followed by an infinitive without any conjunction: *he came and saw me* = *il vint me voir*. See the first sentence of Paragraph II.

<sup>4</sup> *Happy.*

## LIST OF VERBS.

[This is an alphabetical list of all verbs and all irregular verbal forms (except those of 'avoir' and 'être') that occur in the French Text. Irregular verbs are marked "irreg."; they are to be found in § 32 of the Grammar.]

**Accepter**, *to accept.*

**Accomplir**, *to accomplish.*

**Acquitter**, *to acquit.*

**Adopter**, *to adopt.*

**Adresser**, *to address.*

**Aller**, irreg., *to go.*

**Amener**, *to bring, to occasion.*

**Appliquer**, *to apply.*

**Arrêter**, *to stop.*

**Arriver**, *to arrive.*

**Atterrer**, *to knock down.*

**Avoir**, irreg., *to have.*

**Bannir**, *to banish.*

**Charger**, *to load, to commission.*

**Chasser**, *to hunt, to drive away.*

**Commuier**, *to commute.*

**Condamner**, *to condemn.*

**Conservier**, *to preserve.*

**Consulter**, *to consult.*

**Convenir**, irreg. (like **Venir**), *to agree.*

**Convinrent**, nar. past of **Convenir**.

**Convoquer**, *to call together.*

**Coûter**, *to cost.*

**Craignant**, pres. part. of **Craindre**.

- Craindre**, irreg., *to fear*.  
**Cultiver**, *to cultivate*.  
**Décapiter**, *to decapitate*.  
**Décider**, *to decide*.  
**Découcher**, *to sleep away from home*.  
**Découvrir**, irreg. (like **Couvrir**), *to discover*.  
**Défendre**, *to defend, to forbid*.  
**Délibérer**, *to deliberate*.  
**Demander**, *to ask, to require*.  
**Devenait**, descr. past of **Devenir**.  
**Devenir**, irreg. (like **Venir**), *to become*.  
**Deviendrai**, fut. of **Devenir**.  
**Devint**, nar. past of **Devenir**.  
**Dîner**, *to dine*.  
**Dire**, irreg., *to say*.  
**Dit**, past part. of **Dire**.  
**Donner**, *to give*.  
**Dormait**, descr. past of **Dormir**.  
**Dormir**, irreg., *to sleep*.  
**Durer**, *to last*.  
**Embarrasser**, *to embarrass*.  
**Enhardir**, *to encourage*.  
**Enlever**, *to take away*.  
**Entamer**, *to cut into, to begin*.  
**Entrer**, *to enter*.  
**Envoyer**, irreg., *to send*.  
**Être**, irreg., *to be*.  
**Évader**, reflexive, *to escape*.  
**Éviter**, *to avoid, to spare*.  
**Exécuter**, *to execute*.  
**Exiger**, *to exact*.  
**Expulser**, *to expell*.  
**Faire**, irreg., *to make, to do*.  
**Faisait**, descr. past of **Faire**.  
**Fait**, pres. ind. of **Faire**.  
**Falloir**, irreg., impersonal, *to be necessary*.  
**Fallut**, nar. past of **Falloir**.  
**Fasse**, pres. subj. of **Faire**.  
**Faudrait**, cond. of **Falloir**.  
**Faut**, pres. ind. of **Falloir**.  
**Fermer**, *to shut*.  
**Fit**, nar. past of **Faire**.  
**Fournir**, *to furnish*.  
**Franchir**, *to cross*.  
**Gagner**, *to win, to reach*.  
**Garder**, *to watch*.  
**Grever**, *to burden*.  
**Hésiter**, *to hesitate*.  
**Indigner**, *to anger*.  
**Installer**, *to fit up*.  
**Insulter**, *to insult*.  
**Inviter**, *to ask*.  
**Joindre**, irreg., *to join*.  
**Joint**, past part. of **Joindre**.  
**Juger**, *to judge*.  
**Louer**, *to let, to hire*.  
**Manger**, *to eat*.  
**Manquer**, *to fail*.  
**Mépriser**, *to despise*.  
**Monter**, *to ascend, to amount*.  
**Montrer**, *to show*.  
**Négliger**, *to neglect*.  
**Nommer**, *to name*.  
**Obstiner**, *to make obstinate*.  
**Obtenir**, irreg. (like **Tenir**), *to obtain*.  
**Offrait**, descr. past of **Offrir**.  
**Offrir**, irreg., *to offer*.  
**Ordonner**, *to order*.  
**Parler**, *to speak*.  
**Passer**, *to pass*.  
**Pénétrer**, *to penetrate*.  
**Peut**, pres. ind. of **Pouvoir**.  
**Porter**, *to carry*.  
**Poser**, *to put*.  
**Posséder**, *to possess*.

- Pouvait**, descr. past of **Pouvoir**.  
**Pouvez**, pres. ind. of **Pouvoir**.  
**Pouvoir**, irreg., *to be able*.  
**Prélever**, *to levy*.  
**Prendre**, irreg., *to take*.  
**Prévenir**, irreg. (like **Venir**), *to anticipate, to notify*.  
**Préviint**, nar. past of **Prévenir**.  
**Pris**, nar. past of **Prendre**.  
**Prit**, nar. past of **Prendre**.  
**Produire**, irreg., *to produce*.  
**Produisit**, nar. past of **Produire**.  
**Proposer**, *to propose*.  
**Ratifier**, *to ratify*.  
**Réclamer**, *to demand*.  
**Reconquérir**, irreg. (like **Conquérir**), *to regain*.  
**Regarder**, *to look at*.  
**Régner**, *to reign*.  
**Remettre**, irreg. (like **Mettre**), *to put back, to deliver*. Reflexive: *to begin again*.  
**Remis**, past part. of **Remettre**.  
**Remit**, nar. past of **Remettre**.  
**Rendre**, *to render, to restore*.  
**Repars**, pres. ind. of **Repartir**.  
**Repartir**, irreg. (like **Partir**), *to go away again*.  
**Répondre**, *to reply*.  
**Résoudre**, irreg., *to solve*.  
**Rester**, *to stay, to remain*.  
**Réunir**, *to unite*.  
**Revenait**, descr. past of **Revenir**.
- Revenir**, irreg. (like **Venir**), *to return*.  
**Revient**, pres. ind. of **Revenir**.  
**Risquer**, *to risk*.  
**Rôder**, *to prowl*.  
**Saluer**, *to salute, to greet*.  
**Signifier**, *to mean, to make known*.  
**Songer**, *to dream, to think*.  
**Sortir**, irreg., *to go out*.  
**Soumettre**, irreg. (like **Mettre**), *to submit*.  
**Soumit**, nar. past of **Soumettre**.  
**Suffire**, irreg., *to suffice*.  
**Suffisant**, pres. part. of **Suffire**.  
**Supprimer**, *to suppress*.  
**Surgir**, *to arise*.  
**Surprenant**, pres. part. of **Surprendre**.  
**Surprendre**, irreg. (like **Prendre**), *to surprise*.  
**Trouver**, *to find, to think*.  
**Usiter**, *to use*.  
**Valait**, descr. past of **Valoir**.  
**Valoir**, irreg., *to be worth*.  
**Venir**, irreg., *to come*.  
**Vit**, pres. ind. of **Vivre**.  
**Vit**, nar. past of **Voir**.  
**Vivre**, irreg., *to live*.  
**Voir**, irreg., *to see*.  
**Voudrais**, cond. of **Vouloir**.  
**Voulez**, pres. ind. of **Vouloir**.  
**Vouloir**, irreg., *to want, to wish*.

LESSON 1.<sup>1</sup>

**Vowels :** 1 ; 2 ; 2, *a, b, c, d* ; 3. Pronounce all the examples with the teacher.

## LESSON 2.

**Consonants :** 4 ; 4, *a, b, c, d, e* ; 5. Pronounce all the examples with the teacher.

## LESSON 3.

**Donnais :** 29, DESCRIPTIVE PAST (p. 24).<sup>2</sup> — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 1 of the French Text, which is given below in phonetic spelling:<sup>3</sup>—

(je-pril-trèd-ka-trëer pu-ra-lé-di-né-a-vè-kž-na-mi dá-la-prè-si-pó-téd-mò-na-kó. je-vu-drè-za-vwar-le-lwa-ziir de-par-lé-lòg-má de-sè-té-ta-sür-pre-ná, mwè-grá kž-vi-laj-de-fráás, mè-zu-lò-truuv ž-suv-rè-ap-sò-lü, dè-zé-vèèk, ü-né-ti-kèt-plü-sé-ré-mò-nyööz ke-sèld-fö-lwi-ka-tòrz, dè-prè-sip-dó-tò-ri-té plü-dès-pò-tik ke-söd-gi-yóm-de-prüs, jwè-za-ün-tò-lé-rás-ma-ñi-fik pur-lè-vis-de-lü-ma-ni-té, dò-viv-le-suv-rè, lè-mi-nistr, lar-mé, la-ma-jis-tra-tüür, tul-mòdd.)

## LESSON 4.

**Avais, étais :** 33, (2), (3), DESCRIPTIVE PAST (pp. 38, 39). — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 2 of the French Text:—

(sa-lü-ò-se-bò-rwâ-pa-si-fik, ki, sâ-për-dè-zè-va-zyò é-dè-ré-vò-lü-syò, rè-ñá-pè sür-sò-nè-röp-ti-pèpl ó-mi-lyò-dè-sé-ré-mò-ni dün-KUUR u-sò-kò-sèr-vé è-takt lè-tra-di-syò-dè-kat-ré-vé-ráás, dè-vèt-si-bèz-mè, éd-tut-lè-för-mül ü-zi-té-ó-tre-fwa ó-tur-dè-grá-dò-mi-na-tëer. se-mò-nark-pur-tá nè-pwè-sá-gi-nèèr ni-vè-di-ka-tif; é-ká-til-ba-ni, ka-ril-ba-ni, lam-zü-rè-ta-pli-ké a-vèk-dè-mé-naj-má-zè-fi-ni.)

<sup>1</sup> Directions for the use of these Lessons and Exercises are given in the Preface.

<sup>2</sup> In studying paradigms, pupils should be careful to learn the *meaning* of every form.

<sup>3</sup> Read § 9 in the Grammar.

## LESSON 5.

**Donnai : 29, NARRATIVE PAST** (p. 24). — Pronounce after the teacher the first half of Paragraph 3 : —

(á-fó-til-dò-né-dè-prëev? ẽ-jũ-ë-ròp-sti-né, dá-zë-jur-de-dé-vèn, è-sül-tal-suv-rè. il-fũ-tèks-pül-sé-par-dé-krè. pá-dá-të-mwâ il-ró-da ó-tur-dũ-pa-ra-di-dé-fá-dũ, krè-ñá-le-glèv-de-lar-kááj su-la-fòrm dũ-sâ-bre-dë-já-darm. ẽ-jũ-rá-fè il-sá-ar-di, frá-chi-la-frò-tyèèr, ga-ñá-tráts-gòòd le-kër-dũ-pé-i, pé-nè-tre-dál-ka-zi-nó.)

## LESSON 6.

**Eus, fus : 33, (2), (3), NARRATIVE PAST** (pp. 38, 39). — Pronounce after the teacher the second half of Paragraph 3 : —

(mè-su-dè ẽ-fòk-syò-nèr-la-rèèt : nèt-vũ-pâ-ba-ni, me-syö? wi-me-syö, mèj-re-paar parl-pre-myé-trè. ó-ás-kâ, fòr-byè, me-syö, vũ-pũ-vé-zá-tré. é-chaks-mèn il-re-vyè; é-chak-fwa le-mèm-fòk-syò-nèèr lüi-póz-la-mèm-kès-tyò a-la-kè-lil-ré-pò dla-mèm-fa-sò. la-jüs-tis pö-tè-lè-tre-plü-dus?)

## LESSON 7.

**Donnerai, donnerais : 29, FUTURE and CONDITIONAL** (pp. 24, 25). — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 4 : —

(mè-zün-dè-za-né-dèr-nyèèr ẽ-kâ-fòr-graav é-tu-nũ-vó sprò-düi-zi dál-rwâ-yóóm. ẽ-na-sa-si-na-ü-lyö. la-kur-sü-prèèm sré-ü-ni pur-jü-jés-kâ-èk-sèp-syò-nèl, él-mi-zé-raabl fũ-kò-da-né-a-mòòr a-lü-na-ni-mi-té. le-suv-rè è-di-ñé ra-ti-fya-la-rè. ilnrès-tè-plü ka-ég-zé-kü-tél-kri-mi-nèl. a-lòòr ün-di-fi-kül-té-sür-ji. le-pé-in-pò-sé-dè ni-bũ-ró-ni-gi-yò-tin. ke-fèèr? sür-la-vi-dũ-mi-nis-tre-dè-za-fèr-zé-trá-jèèr, le-prè-sá-ta-ma dè-né-gò-sya-syò a-vèk-le-gũ-vèr-ne-má-frá-sè pũ-ròpt-nir-le-prè dë-kũ-pèrd-tèèt a-vèk-sò-na-pa-rèèy.)

## LESSON 8.

**Aurai, aurais, serai, serais :** 33, (2), (3), FUTURE and CONDITIONAL (pp. 38, 39, 40). — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 5 : —

(de-lòg-dé-li-bé-ra-syò-zür-lyö ó-mi-nis-tè-ra-pa-ri. ò-ré-pò-di á-fè á-ná-vwa-yá-la-nòt-dè-frè pur-dé-plas-má-dè-bwâ é-dü-pra-ti-syè. le-tu-mò-tè-ta-sèz-mil-frá. sa-ma-jès-té-sò-ja ke-lò-pé-ra-syò lüi-kut-rè-byè-chèèr ; la-sa-sè ne-va-lè-sèrt-pâ-se-pri. sèz-mil-frá-purl-KU-dë-dróól ! áá mè-nò. ò-na-drè-sa-a-lòòr la-mèmd-máád ó-GU-vèr-ne-má-i-ta-lyè. ë-rwâ, ë-frèèr nes-mò-tre-rè-pâ-sá-dut si-ég-zi-já kün-ré-püb-lik.)

## LESSON 9.

**Donne :** 29, INDICATIVE PRESENT and IMPERATIVE (pp. 24, 25). — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 6 : —

(le-GU-vèr-ne-má-i-ta-lyè á-vwa-ya-ë-mé-mwaar ki-mò-tè-ta-duz-mil-frá. DUUZ mil frá ! il-fó-drè-prél-vé ë-nè-pó-nu-vó, ë-nè-pód-dö-frá par-tèt-da-bi-tá. sla-sü-fi-rè pu-ram-né-dè-truble-zè-kò-nü-dá-lé-ta. ò-sò-ja-a-fèr-dé-ka-pi-tél-gö pa-rè-sè-ple-sòl-da. mèl-jé-né-ral, kò-sül-té, ré-pò-di á-né-zi-tá ke-sè-zòm na-vè-pö-tè-tre-pâ-zün-pra-tik-sü-fi-záát de-larm-bláách pur-sa-ki-té-dün-táäch de-má-dá-tün-grá-dèk-spé-ryáás dál-ma-ni-má-dü-sâabr.)

## LESSON 10.

**Ai, aie :** 33, (2), INDICATIVE PRESENT and IMPERATIVE (pp. 38, 39). — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 7 : —

(a-lòòr le-près-kò-vò-kad-NU-vó la-KUR-sü-prèèm é-lüi-SU-mis-ká-á-ba-ra-sá. ò-dé-li-bé-ra-lò-tá, sá-dé-KU-vriir ó-kë-mwa-yè-pratik. á-fè le-pre-myé-pré-zi-dá prò-pó-zad-kò-mü-é-la-pènd-mòòr á-sèld-pri-zò-pèr-pé-tüèl, é-lam-zür-fü-ta-dòp-té. mè-zòn-pò-sé-dè-pád-pri-zò. il-fa-lü-tá-nè-sta-lé-ün, é-ë-jó-lyé-fü-nò-mé, ki-pri-li-vrè-zò-dü-pri-zò-nyé.)

## LESSON 11.

**Suis, sois : 33, (3),** INDICATIVE PRESENT and IMPERATIVE (pp. 39, 40). — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 8 : —

(pá-dá-si-mwâ tu-ta-la-byè. le-kap-tif-dòr-mè-tul-juur sü-rün-pâ-yas dá-sò-ré-düi, él-gar-dyè á-fe-zè-tó-tá sü-rün-chèèz de-vá-la-pòrt ár-gar-dá-pâ-sé-lè-vwa-ya-jëër. mèl-prèès è-té-kò-nòm, sè-la-sò-mwè-dre-dé-fó, é-ils-fè-rá-dre-kòòt dè-plüp-tit-dé-páás a-kò-pli-dá-sò-né-ta. la-list-ná-nè-pâ-lòòg. ò-lüir-mi-dò la-nòt-dè-frè re-la-tif a-la-kré-a-syò de-sèt-fòk-syò-nu-vèl, a-lá-tre-tyèd-la-pri-zò, dü-pri-zò-nyé, é-dü-vè-yëër. le-trèt-má-des-dèr-nyé gre-vè-lurd-má le-büd-jè-dü-suv-rè.)

## LESSON 12.

**Donner : 29,** all but the SUBJUNCTIVE. — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 9 : —

(il-fi-da-bòr-la-gri-mas ; mè-ká-til-sò-ja kes-la-pu-vè-dü-ré-tu-juur, le-kò-da-né-é-tè-jën, il-pré-vè-sò-mi-nis-tred-la-jüs-tis da-vwa-ra-prá-dre-dèm-züür pur-sü-pri-mé-sèt-dé-páás. le-mi-nistr kò-sül-tal-pré-zi-dá-dü-tri-bü-nal, é-tu-dö-kò-vèèr kò-sü-prim-rè-la-charj-de-jó-lyé. le-pri-zò-nyé, è-vi-té-as-gar-dé-tu-sèl, ne-pu-vè-má-kéd-sé-va-dé, ski-ré-zu-drè-la-kès-tyò a-la-sa-tis-fak-syòd-tus.)

## LESSON 13.

**Avoir : 33, (2),** all but the SUBJUNCTIVE. — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 10 : —

(le-jó-lyé fü-dò-rá-dü a-sa-fa-miij, é-è-nèd-de-küi-zin-dü-pa-lè rès-ta-char-jé-sè-ple-mád-pòr-té, ma-tè-é-swaar, la-nu-ri-tür-dü-ku-paabl. mè-se-lüi-si ne-fi-tó-kün-tá-ta-tiiv pur-re-kò-ké-rir-sa-li-bèr-té. òòr, è-juur, kò-mò-na-vè-né-gli-jéd-lüi-fur-nir-sè-za-li-má, òl-vi-ta-ri-vé trá-kil-má pur-lè-ré-kla-mé ; é-il-pri-dè-lòr-la-bi-tüd, a-fè-dé-vi-té-ün-kur-só-küi-zi-nyé, dev-ni-ró-zèr-dèr-pâ má-jé-ó-pa-lè a-vèk-lè-jád-sèr-vis, dò-tild-vè-la-mi.)



## LESSON 14.

**Être : 33, (3),** all but the SUBJUNCTIVE. — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 11 : —

(a-prèl-dé-jë-né, i-la-lè-fè-rë-tuur, jüs-ka-mò-té-kar-ló. i-lá-trè-par-fwa ó-ka-zi-nó ris-ké-sè-frá-sürl-ta-pi-vèèr. ká-ti-la-vè-ga-ñé, il-sò-frè-të-bò-di-né dá-zë-nò-tè-lár-nò, püi-zil-rev-nè-dá-sa-pri-zò, dò-til-fèr-mè-ta-vèk-swè la-pòr-tòd-dá. iln-dé-ku-cha-pâ-zün-sël-fwa. la-si-tü-a-syò dev-nè-di-fi-sil, nò-purl-kò-da-né, mè-pur-lè-jüüj. la-kurs-ré-ü-nid-nu-vó, é-il-fü-dé-si-dé kò-nè-vit-rèl-kri-mi-nèl a-sòr-tir-dè-zé-tad-mò-na-kó.)

## LESSON 15.

**Articles : 104 ; 105 ; 106 ; 112.** — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 12 : —

(lòr-skò-lüi-si-ñi-fya-sè-ta-rè, il-ré-pò-di-sè-ple-má : jvu-truv-plè-zá. è-byè, kès-kej-de-vyè-dré-mwa? jné-plüd-mwa-yè-dég-zis-táás. ke-vu-lé-vu-kej-fas? jé-tè-kò-da-né-a-mòòr. vun-ma-vé-pâ-zég-zé-kü-té. jné-ryè-di. je-süi-zá-süit-kò-da-né-a-la-pri-zò-pèr-pé-tüèl ér-mi-zó-mè-dë-jó-lyé. vu-ma-vé-zál-vé-mò-gar-dyè. jné-ryè-di-á-kòòr. ó-jur-düi, vu-vu-lém-cha-sé-dü-pé-i. ââ mè-nò. je-süi-pri-zò-nyé, vò-tre-pri-zò-nyé, jü-jé-é-kò-da-né-par-vu. ja-kò-pli-ma-pèn-fi-dèl-má. je-rès-ti-si.)

## LESSON 16.

**Definite article : 105 ; 106 ; 108, (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6).** — Pronounce after the teacher Paragraph 13 : —

(la-kur-sü-prèèm fü-ta-tè-ré. le-prèès ü-tün-kò-lèr-tèr-ribl é-òr-dò-nad-prá-dre-dèm-züür. òs-re-mi-ta-dé-li-bé-ré. a-lòòr, il-fü-dé-si-dé kò-nò-fri-rè-tó-ku-paabl ün-pâ-syòd-si-sá-frá pu-ra-lé-vi-vra-lé-trá-jé. i-lak-sèp-ta. i-la-lu-é-ëp-ti-tá-kló a-sè-mi-nüt-de-lé-tad-sò-ná-syè-suv-rè, é-il-vi-të-rö-sür-sa-tèèr, kül-ti-vá-kèlk-lé-güm é-mé-pri-zá-lè-pò-tá-ta.)

## LESSON 17.

Definite article : 106 ; 109 ; 110 ; 111, (1), (2).<sup>1</sup>— Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraph 1.

## LESSON 18.

Nouns : 129 ; 130 ; 130, (1), (2), (3) ; 132 ; 132, (1), (2), (3). — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraph 3.

## LESSON 19.

Vowels and consonants : 2 ; 2, *a, b, c, d* ; 3 ; 3, *b, c* ; 3, *a, d, e, f* ; 4 ; 4, *a, b, c, d, e* ; 5 ; 5, *a, c* ; 5, *b, d*. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraph 2.

## LESSON 20.

Liaison : 6 ; 6, (1), (2), (3), *a*. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraph 11.

## LESSON 21.

Accent, quantity, intonation : 7 ; 8 ; 9 ; 10, *a* ; 11. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraph 4.

## LESSON 22.

Spelling : 12 ; 12, *a, b* ; 13 ; 14. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraphs 5 and 6.

## LESSON 23.

Personal pronouns : 56 ; 58 ; 59 ; 60 ; 71 ; 73. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraphs 7 and 9.

## LESSON 24.

Conjunctive personal pronouns : 60 ; 61 ; 62 ; 63 ; 64 ; 65 ; 66. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraphs 10 and 13.

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 39, (1) in the Grammar.

## LESSON 25.

Conjunctive personal pronouns : 67 ; 68 ; 68, **A** ; 68, **a** ; 69 ; 69, **A**. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraph 12.

## LESSON 26.

Adjectives : 114 ; 115 ; 115, (1), (3) ; 115, (2), (4) ; 116 ; 116, (1), (4), (5) ; 122. — Pronounce and study with the teacher Paragraph 8.

## LESSON 27.

Derivation of tenses : 22 ; 22, *a, b* ; 23 ; 24 ; 25 ; 26.

## LESSON 28.

Derivation of tenses : 26 ; 26, *i, ii, iv*.

## LESSON 29.

Derivation of tenses : 26 ; 26, *i, ii, iv, v* ; 28.

## LESSON 30.

Donner : 28 ; 29, all.

## LESSON 31.

Choisir : 26 ; 26, *i, ii, iv, v* ; 28 ; 30, as far as FUTURE.

## LESSON 32.

Choisir : 30, all.

## LESSON 33.

Rompre : 26 ; 26, *i, ii, iv, v* ; 28 ; 31, as far as FUTURE.

## LESSON 34.

Rompre : 31, all.

## LESSON 35.

Donner, rompre : 29, all ; 31, all.

## LESSON 36.

Choisir : 28 ; 30, all.

## LESSON 37.

First conjugation : 29, *a, b, c, d.*

## LESSON 38.

Avoir : 26 ; 26, i., ii., iv., v. ; 33, (2), as far as FUTURE.

## LESSON 39.

Avoir : 33, (2), all.

## LESSON 40.

Être : 26 ; 26, i., ii., iv., v. ; 27 ; 33, (3), as far as FUTURE.

## LESSON 41.

Être : 33, (3), all.

## LESSON 42.

Regular verbs : 29, all ; 30, all ; 31, all.

## LESSON 43.

Compound tenses : 21 ; 21, *a* ; 34, (1), conjugate 'avoir sauté' in full.

## LESSON 44.

Compound tenses : 21 ; 21, *a* ; 34, (2), conjugate 'être tombé' in full.

## EXERCISE I.

Paragraph 1 of the French text. — *Let every pupil construct from each one of the following phrases five sentences containing verbs in compound tenses :* (1) prendre<sup>1</sup> le train de quatre heures ; (2) aller<sup>2</sup> dîner avec un ami ; (3) avoir le loisir de parler ; (4) parler longuement de cet État surprenant ; (5) trouver un souverain absolu.

<sup>1</sup> The past participle of 'prendre,' to take, is 'pris' (pri).

<sup>2</sup> 'Aller,' to go, is conjugated with 'être.'

## LESSON 45.

Passive : 16 ; 18, *a, c* ; 35.

## LESSON 46.

Passive : 35, conjugate 'être oublié' in full.

## EXERCISE II.

Paragraph 2. — Give 'les traditions sont conservées intactes,' 'toutes les formules sont usitées,' and 'la mesure est appliquée' in all the tenses of the indicative and conditional. — Conjugate in full the passive of 'bannir.'

## LESSON 47.

Personal pronouns : 56 ; 56, *a, b* ; 57 ; 57, (1), (2), (3), (4) ; 58 ; 59 ; 60.

## LESSON 48.

Conjunctive personal pronouns : 60 ; 61 ; 62 ; 63 ; 63, *A, B* ; 64 ; 64, *a* ; 65 ; 66 ; 67 ; 68 ; 68, *A* ; 68, *a* ; 69 ; 69, *A*.

## LESSON 49.

Disjunctive personal pronouns : 71 ; 72 ; 73 ; 74 ; 74, (1), (2) ; 75.

## EXERCISE III.

Paragraphs 1 and 3. — Answer the following questions in French, using as many personal pronouns as possible : (1) avec qui<sup>1</sup> dînez-vous<sup>2</sup>? (2) avec qui ont-ils dîné<sup>2</sup>? (3) avec qui dînions-nous<sup>2</sup>? (4) avec qui avait-il dîné<sup>2</sup>? (5) avec qui dînerai-je<sup>2</sup>? (6) avec qui dîneraient-elles<sup>2</sup>? (7) avec qui aurait-elle dîné<sup>2</sup>? (8) en donnent-ils des preuves? (9) qui en donnerait des preuves<sup>2</sup>? (10) en avez-vous donné des preuves? (11) qui insulta le souverain<sup>2</sup>? (12) nous avait-il insultés? (13) m'insulte-

<sup>1</sup> The interrogative pronoun 'qui' (ki) means *whom* or *who*.

<sup>2</sup> Let the different pupils give different answers to this question.

rez-vous? (14) les arrêterait-on? (15) qui l'aura arrêtée<sup>1</sup>? (16) m'auraient-elles arrêté? (17) qui lui pose la même question<sup>1</sup>? (18) leur posait-elle la même question? (19) me poserez-vous la même question? (20) vous posèrent-ils la même question?

#### LESSON 50.

Personal pronouns: 58; 59; 60; 67; 68; 68, A; 68, a; 69; 69, A; 71; 74; 74, (1), (2); 75.

#### EXERCISE IV.

Paragraphs 3 and 4.—*Answer the following questions in French, using as many personal pronouns as possible*<sup>2</sup>: (1) à qui posait-il la question<sup>3</sup>? (2) à qui ont-elles posé la question<sup>3</sup>? (3) qui jugera ce cas? (4) qui a été condamné à mort? (5) qui fut condamné à mort? (6) qui avait ratifié l'arrêt? (7) qui était resté? (8) qui exécuterait le criminel? (9) qui possède une guillotine<sup>4</sup>? (10) avec qui auriez-vous entamé des négociations<sup>5</sup>?

#### LESSON 51.

Interrogation: 36; 38.

#### LESSON 52.

Interrogation: 37; 37, A, B with (1) and (2), C with (1) and (2) and (3).

#### EXERCISE V.

Paragraphs 4 and 5.—*Make questions out of the following sentences*<sup>6</sup>: (1) nous jugeons ce cas; (2) vous auriez ratifié l'arrêt; (3) j'avais entamé des négociations; (4) je répondis; (5) tu songes; (6) vous m'avez adressé la même demande; (7) ils se

<sup>1</sup> Let the different pupils give different answers to this question.

<sup>2</sup> Let the different pupils give different answers, using different pronouns.

<sup>3</sup> Give eight answers using disjunctive forms for the indirect object, and six answers using conjunctive forms for both objects.

<sup>4</sup> Form the answers after this model: j'en possède une, *I possess one (of them)*.

<sup>5</sup> Use 'en,' *some*, in place of 'des négociations.'

<sup>6</sup> Give two forms for every question.

montreraient exigeants ; (8) un assassinat a eu lieu ; (9) le misérable fut condamné ; (10) le souverain ratifia l'arrêt ; (11) une difficulté surgit ; (12) le prince avait entamé des négociations ; (13) de longues délibérations<sup>1</sup> eurent lieu ; (14) on répondra enfin ; (15) le tout montait à seize mille francs ; (16) Sa Majesté<sup>1</sup> songea ; (17) l'opération<sup>1</sup> lui aurait coûté cher ; (18) l'assassin valait ce prix ; (19) on adresse la même demande au gouvernement italien ; (20) un frère ne se montrerait pas si exigeant.

## LESSON 53.

Possessives : 76 ; 77 ; 78 ; 78, *a* ; 79.

## LESSON 54.

Possessive adjectives : 78 ; 79 ; 80 ; 80, *a, b, c, d*.

## LESSON 55.

Possessive pronouns : 81 ; 82 ; 83 ; 83, *a*.

EXERCISE VI.<sup>2</sup>

Paragraph 5.<sup>3</sup>— *Use with every noun in the paragraph the possessive adjectives of all the different persons. — Substitute for every noun in the paragraph all the different possessive pronouns that might represent it. — Give eight answers, containing disjunctive object-pronouns, to the following question : à qui est le prix ? — Give six answers, containing conjunctive object-pronouns, to this question : à qui couperait-on le cou*<sup>4</sup> ?

## LESSON 56.

Negation : 36 ; 43.

<sup>1</sup> Feminine noun.

<sup>2</sup> In performing this exercise, pupils must be sure they understand the meaning or meanings of every French form they use.

<sup>3</sup> Of the nouns in this paragraph, we have seen that 'délibérations' and 'opération' are feminine; the gender of some is indicated by an article or an adjective; the others are all masculine.

<sup>4</sup> 'Couper' means *to cut*.

## LESSON 57.

Negation : 39 ; 44.

## LESSON 58.

Negation : 39, (1), (2), (3), *d* ; 40 ; 40, *A, B* ; 41 ; 41, *A, B* ; 41, (3) ; 42.

## EXERCISE VII.

Paragraphs 6 and 7. — *Make the following sentences interrogative as well as negative* : (1) ils n'avaient pas une pratique suffisante de l'arme blanche ; (2) on ne possédait pas de prison. — *Turn the following sentences into negative statements and negative questions* : (1) je l'envoyai ; (2) tu montais ; (3) cela suffirait ; (4) nous les amenons ; (5) vous y songez ; (6) ils l'ont décapité ; (7) il fut consulté ; (8) elle a répondu ; (9) elles avaient hésité ; (10) je m'en serais acquitté ; (11) vous la demanderez ; (12) il le lui soumit ; (13) elle est adoptée ; (14) on en possède ; (15) j'ai été nommé. — *Give the imperative, <sup>1</sup> positive and negative, of these verbs* : (1) les amener ; (2) y songer ; (3) me consulter<sup>2</sup> ; (4) lui répondre ; (5) me la demander.<sup>2</sup> — *In the following sentences, use a negation with the infinitive* : (1) je lui propose de convoquer la Cour suprême ; (2) on proposera de délibérer longtemps ; (3) ils proposèrent de la commuer ; (4) nous avons proposé de l'adopter ; (5) vous proposiez de le nommer.

## LESSON 59.

Relative pronouns : 84 ; 84, *a, b* ; 85 ; 85, (1) ; 86 ; 87.

## LESSON 60.

Relative pronouns : 85 ; 85, (1) ; 85, *a, b* ; 86 ; 86, (1), (2), *a* ; 87 ; 87, *b*.<sup>1</sup> See § 68, A.<sup>2</sup> Omit the first person plural.



## EXERCISE VIII.

**Paragraphs 6 and 7.** — *Supply the French relative pronouns in the following sentences:* (1) envoyez-moi *what* vous avez ; (2) c'est un mémoire *that* j'ai envoyé ; (3) il faut prélever un impôt *which* monte à douze mille francs ; (4) il faudrait le faire décapiter, *which* amènerait des troubles inconnus dans l'État ; (5) j'ai *what* me suffit ; (6) ce sont les troubles à *which* nous songeons ; (7) songez à *what* vous faites ; (8) est-ce le gueux *who* sera décapité ? (9) c'est un soldat *that* on a décapité ; (10) envoyez-moi le soldat *whom* vous avez consulté ; (11) est-ce le général à *whom* vous songez ? (12) *what* il répond suffirait pour amener des troubles ; (13) il s'acquitte de *what* ne demande pas une grande expérience ; (14) est-ce une tâche *of which* ils s'acquitteront ? (15) elle me demande *what* vous m'avez envoyé ; (16) ce sont des tâches à *which* vous ne songez guère ; (17) c'est une tâche pour *which* ils n'avaient pas une pratique suffisante ; (18) est-ce le prince *who* convoque la Cour suprême ? (19) le prince convoqua la Cour, à *which* il soumit ce cas embarrassant ; (20) ce fut la Cour suprême *that* délibéra ; (21) c'est un moyen à *which* on ne songe plus ; (22) le prince, à *whom* on avait proposé ce moyen, n'hésita plus ; (23) est-ce le prisonnier *whose* on a commué la peine ? (24) c'est la Cour *of which* j'ai été nommé président ; (25) c'était le prisonnier *of whom* il avait pris livraison.

## LESSON 61.

**Numerals :** 127, (1) ; 127, (1), *a, b, c, d*.

## LESSON 62.

**Numerals :** 127, (2) ; 127, (2), *a, b, c, d* ; 127, (3) ; 127, (3), *a*.

## LESSON 63.

**Numerals :** 127, (4) ; 127, (4), *b* ; 128 ; 128, (1), (2), (3), (4), *a*.

## EXERCISE IX.

**Paragraph 8.** — *Pronounce the following phrases, and write out the French names of the numbers: 6 mois, 6 États; 2 captifs, 2 États; 1 jour, 1 État; 4 pailles, 4 États; 3 gardiens, 3 États; 5 chaises, 5 États; 7 portes, 7 États; 10 voyageurs, 10 États; 8 princes, 8 États; 9 défauts, 9 États; 20 dépenses, 20 États; 31 listes, 31 États; 45 notes, 45 États; 80 prisons, 80 États; 83 prisonniers, 83 États; 87 veilleurs, 87 États; 100 souverains, 100 États; 102 mois, 102 États; 200 captifs, 200 États; 288 jours, 288 États; 1000 gardiens; 9000 chaises; 1000000 voyageurs.* — *Put ordinal numerals with the following nouns, using different numerals with the different words: les mois<sup>1</sup>; le captif; le jour; la paille; son réduit; la chaise; la porte; les voyageurs<sup>1</sup>; le prince; son défaut; le compte; les dépenses; son État; la liste; la note; les frais<sup>1</sup>; la création; cette fonction; l'entretien<sup>1</sup>; la prison; le prisonnier; le veilleur; le traitement; le budget; le souverain.*

## LESSON 64.

**Reflexive verbs:** 45; 45, *a*; 46; 46, *a, b, c*; 47, (1).

## LESSON 65.

**Reflexive verbs:** 46; 47, (1), (2), (3); 18, *a, d*.

## EXERCISE X.

**Paragraphs 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.** — *Conjugate the present indicative singular of 's'enhardir,' the present indicative plural of 'se réunir à Paris,' the present perfect indicative of 's'adresser au gouvernement italien,' the singular of the descriptive past of 'se montrer exigeant,' the plural of the descriptive past of 's'acquitter de la tâche,' the past perfect indicative of 'se proposer de trouver un moyen pratique,' the narrative past of 'se regarder,' the future of 's'en rendre compte,' the conditional*

---

<sup>1</sup> Masculine.

*singular of 'se garder tout seul,' the conditional plural of 's'évader.'* — Give the imperative, positive and negative, of 's'acquitter de la tâche.'

## LESSON 66.

Derivation of tenses : 25 ; 26 ; 26, i., ii.

## LESSON 67.

Derivation of tenses : 26, i., ii., iv., v. ; 27.

## EXERCISE XI.

Paragraph 8. — Conjugate in full the tenses represented by 'dormait' and 'remit.' — Describe the following words, and give all forms that can be constructed from them : allai ; regardant ; passer ; fais ; rendre.

## LESSON 68.

Devoir : 32 ; 32, a, b ; 32, Devoir (p. 34), construct the whole verb.

## LESSON 69.

Voice and mood : 16 ; 16, a ; 17 ; 17, a, b, c ; 18 ; 18, a, b, c, d, e, f ; 19 ; 19, a, b ; 19, c.

## LESSON 70.

Tense, person, and number : 20 ; 20, a, b ; 21 ; 21, a, b ; 21, c, d ; 22 ; 22, a, b ; 23 ; 24.

## EXERCISE XII.

Paragraphs 7, 8, 9, 10. — Describe and account for all verbal forms in these paragraphs. Pay particular attention to infinitive constructions. For irregular forms see List of Verbs in this book.

## LESSON 71.

Aller : 33, (1), all.

## LESSON 72.

Dire : 32, Dire (p. 34), construct the whole verb.

## LESSON 73.

Personal pronouns : 56 ; 56, *a, b* ; 57 ; 57, (1), (2), (3), (4) ; 58 ; 59 ; 71 ; 72 ; 73 ; 74 ; 74, (1), (2) ; 75.

## EXERCISE XIII.

Paragraphs 10 and 11. — *Reply in French to the following questions, giving eight answers, with different personal pronouns, to every question :* (1) à qui vous rend-on ? (2) qui vit-on arriver<sup>1</sup> ? (3) à qui évitons-nous une course<sup>2</sup> ? (4) à qui vient-il ? (5) à qui songe-t-elle<sup>3</sup> ? (6) avec qui mange-t-il ? (7) qui allait faire un tour<sup>4</sup> ? (8) qui a gagné<sup>5</sup> ? (9) à qui s'offrent-ils ? (10) qui est-ce ?

## LESSON 74.

Personal pronouns : 58 ; 59 ; 60 ; 61 ; 62 ; 62, *a* ; 63 ; 63, *A, B* ; 63, *B*, (1), (2) ; 63, *c* ; 64 ; 64, *a, b* ; 65 ; 65, (1) ; 66 ; 66, *a, b* ; 67 ; 68 ; 68, *A* ; 69 ; 69, *A*.

## EXERCISE XIV.

Paragraph 12. — *Translate the first clause in two entirely different ways. — Give the imperative, positive and negative, of these verbs :* (1) lui répondre ; (2) les trouver ; (3) le condamner à mort ; (4) la lui enlever ; (5) me chasser du pays.<sup>6</sup> — *Answer the following questions in French, using, whenever it is possible, pronouns and adverbs instead of nouns or phrases :* (1) ai-je été condamné à la prison perpétuelle ? (2) a-t-on voulu

<sup>1</sup> Use no verb in the answers to this question.

<sup>2</sup> Use two indirect object-pronouns in every answer to this question.

<sup>3</sup> For 'songer' see Paragraph 9.

<sup>4</sup> Use two subject pronouns in every answer to this question.

<sup>5</sup> Make the answers emphatic.

<sup>6</sup> Omit the first person plural.

me chasser du pays? (3) est-il resté à Monaco? (4) m'avez-vous enlevé mon gardien? (5) combien de prisonniers ont-ils? (6) voulait-on condamner le prisonnier à mort? (7) auriez-vous voulu chasser le geôlier du pays? (8) les condamna-t-on<sup>1</sup>? (9) vous chasseront-ils<sup>1</sup>? (10) ai-je signifié cet arrêt au prisonnier? (11) a-t-on enlevé au prisonnier ses gardiens? (12) s'est-il dit qu'il restera? (13) m'avez-vous trouvé des gardiens? (14) la prison est-elle à Monaco? (15) combien de prisonniers reste-t-il?

## LESSON 75.

Faire : 33, (4), all.

## LESSON 76.

Voir : 32 ; 32, *a*, *b* ; 32, Voir (p. 36), construct the whole verb.

## LESSON 77.

Articles : 105 ; 106 ; 106, *a* ; 108, (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) ; 108, *a* ; 112 ; 112, *a* ; 113, (1), (2), (3), (4).

## LESSON 78.

Articles : 109 ; 110 ; 110, *a* ; 111 ; 111, *a* ; 111, (1) ; 111, (1), *a*, *b* ; 111, (2) ; 111, (2), *a*.

## EXERCISE XV.

Paragraphs 10, 11, 12. — *Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences* : (1) vous êtes *a* juge ; (2) il dîne *at the* hôtel ; (3) on n'a pas *any* prison ; (4) je suis *a* cuisinier ; (5) il a eu . . . bons juges ; (6) je n'ai pas *any* famille ; (7) avez-vous . . . mains? (8) il s'offre . . . bons dîners ; (9) vous êtes *a* prisonnier ; (10) il n'a guère *any* aliments ; (11) ont-ils *any* gardiens? (12) ce sont . . . bons prisonniers ; (13) ils n'ont pas *any* amis ; (14) . . . criminels n'entrent pas *into the* Casino ; (15) nous n'avons plus . . . gardiens ; (16) voit-on . . . criminels à Monte-

<sup>1</sup> Give a negative answer.

Carlo? (17) *the* geôlier n'a point *any* prisonniers; (18) ce sont . . . situations difficiles; (19) nous n'avons pas *any* nourriture; (20) a-t-on condamné *any* criminels? (21) il est chargé de *them* lui porter; (22) *the* famille of *the* geôlier resta dans *the* cuisine; (23) *the* aide de cuisine portait *some* nourriture to *the* coupable; (24) ils ont fait . . . tentatives pour reconquérir . . . liberté; (25) *a* ami of *the* aide de cuisine arriva at *the* palais; (26) *the* gens de service portent . . . aliments to *the* famille of *the* geôlier; (27) on a fourni . . . aliments to *the* ami of *the* cuisinier; (28) c'est pour éviter *a* course to *the* gens de service; (29) *the* cuisinier a *the* habitude de venir to *the* palais porter . . . nourriture to *the* amis of *the* coupables; (30) *the* ami of *the* prisonnier a pris *the* habitude de venir manger at *the* palais, pour éviter *a* course to *the* aide de cuisine.

## LESSON 79.

**Vouloir** : 33, (10), all.

## LESSON 80.

**Valoir** : 32; 32, *a, b*; 32, Valoir (p. 36), construct the whole verb.

## LESSON 81.

**Nouns** : 129; 129, *a, b, c*; 130; 130, (1), (2), (3); 130, (4); 131, *a*; 132; 132, (1), (2), (3); 132, (3), *a, b*.

## EXERCISE XVI.

Paragraphs 10, 11, 12, 13. — Give the plural of all singular nouns (except proper names) in these paragraphs, using the definite article with all forms, both singular and plural.<sup>1</sup> — Make from the words in Paragraphs 12 and 13 five phrases or sentences illustrating the possessive construction described in § 129.

## LESSON 82.

**Pouvoir** : 33, (6), all.

<sup>1</sup> 'Mort' is feminine.

## LESSON 83.

**Partir** : 32, Partir (p. 35), construct the whole verb.

## LESSON 84.

**Adjectives** : 114 ; 114, *c, d* ; 115 ; 115, (1), (2), (3), (4) ; 117 ; 118 ; 120, *b*.

## LESSON 85.

**Adjectives** : 116 ; 116, (1), (2), (3), (4), (5) ; 122 ; 122, (1), *a* ; 122, (2), *a, b, c, d* ; 122, (3), *a, b*.

## LESSON 86.

**Comparison** : 123 ; 123, (1), (2) ; 123, *d* ; 124 ; 124, *b* ; 125 ; 125, *a*.

## LESSON 87.

**Adjective phrases of quantity** : 126 ; 126, (1), (2), (3), (4) ; 126, *a, b, c*.

## EXERCISE XVII.

**Paragraphs 1, 2, 4, 5, 7.**— *Give the masculine and feminine, singular and plural, of all adjectives in these paragraphs.*<sup>1</sup>— *Construct from the words in Paragraphs 1 and 2 three sentences illustrating the principle of agreement stated in § 118.*— *Compare 'un bon roi,' 'un peuple heureux,' and 'une petite cour.'*— *Construct, with the help of the words in Paragraph 4, five sentences illustrating the use of 'assez,' 'combien,' 'beaucoup,' 'trop,' 'peu.'*

## LESSON 88.

**Falloir** : 33, (5), all ; 54, all.

## LESSON 89.

**Mettre** : 32, Mettre (p. 35), construct the whole verb.

<sup>1</sup> The masculine singular of 'cérémonieuse,' 'intactes,' 'infinis,' 'dernières,' 'étrangères,' 'perpétuelle' is 'cérémonieux,' 'intact,' 'infini,' 'dernier,' 'étranger,' 'perpétuel.'

## LESSON 90.

Impersonal verbs : 48 ; 49, (1), (2), (3) ; 49, *a, b*.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

Paragraphs 3 and 6. — *Construct with the words in these paragraphs, and with the following verbs, fifteen sentences, using all the fifteen verbs, and introducing as many different moods, tenses, and persons as possible : aller, avoir, y avoir, devoir, dire, donner, être, faire, falloir, mettre, partir, pouvoir, valoir, voir, vouloir.*

## LESSON 91.

Savoir : 33, (7), all.

## LESSON 92.

Lire : 32, Lire (p. 35), construct the whole verb.

## LESSON 93.

Interrogatives : 89 ; 89, *a* ; 90 ; 90, (1), (2) ; 91 ; 92 ; 93.

## LESSON 94.

Interrogatives : 94 ; 94, *a* ; 95 ; 95, *a* ; 95, *c, d, e*.

## LESSON 95.

Interrogatives : 90 ; 90, (1), (2) ; 91 ; 92 ; 93 ; 94 ; 95.

## EXERCISE XIX.

Paragraphs 8, 9, 10. — *Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences : (1) what alla bien? (2) who dormait? (3) sur what dormait-il? (4) voici deux paillasses — sur which dormait-il? (5) what faisait le gardien? (6) whose était la chaise? (7) whom regardait-il? (8) who est-ce? (9) who passe? (10) voilà beaucoup de voyageurs — which ones passeront devant la porte? (11) who est économe? (12) what est son moindre défaut? (13) il y avait trop de dépenses — of which ones se*



faisait-il rendre compte? (14) de *what* se fait-il rendre compte? (15) à *whom* fait-il rendre compte des dépenses? (16) de *what* dépenses se fait-il rendre compte? (17) *whose* est l'État? (18) je me fais rendre compte de *what* s'accomplit dans mon État; (19) vous vous rendez compte de *what* vous avez fait; (20) il y a trois gardiens — *to which one* remettra-t-on la note? (21) *what* on lui remit? (22) *what* c'était? (23) *what* note lui remit-on? (24) *what* étaient les frais? (25) *what* grevait lourdement le budget du souverain?— *Construct ten questions from the sentences in Paragraphs 9 and 10.*

## LESSON 96.

**Venir** : 33, (9), all.

## LESSON 97.

**Ecrire** : 32, Écrire (p. 34), construct the whole verb.

## LESSON 98.

**Demonstratives** : 96 ; 96, *a* ; 97 ; 98 ; 99 ; 100 ; 100, *e* ; 101.

## LESSON 99.

**Demonstratives** : 102 ; 103 ; 103, **A** ; 103, **A**, (1), (2), (3).

## LESSON 100.

**Demonstratives** : 97 ; 98 ; 99 ; 100 ; 101 ; 102 ; 103 ; 103, **A** ; 103, **A**, (1), (2), (3).

## EXERCISE XX.

**Paragraphs 11, 12, 13.** — *Prefix the proper form of the adjective 'ce' to the following words, using both the emphatic and the unemphatic forms* : dîner ; francs ; hôtel ; prison ; juges ; cour ; criminel ; état. — *Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences* : (1) je vais faire *this* ; (2) ne faites pas *that* ; (3) *this is* Monte-Carlo ; (4) *that is* le Casino ; (5) est *that* bon? (6) est *this* le criminel? (7) *that is* la porte ; (8) *that*

sera difficile ; (9) *this is* la situation ; (10) *that* était le condamné ; (11) *this* est bon, mais *that* est trop difficile ; (12) était *that* l'hôtel ? (13) *he who* gagne s'offre un bon dîner ; (14) *this is* la porte — *the one that* j'ai fermée ; (15) il entra au Casino — *the one* de Monte-Carlo ; (16) *those who* ont risqué cinq francs n'ont pas gagné ; (17) c'est une cour — *the one* de la prison ; (18) *what* portes ferment-ils — *the ones* du Casino ou *the ones* de la prison ? (19) il y a beaucoup de juges — *those* de Monaco et *those* de la Cour suprême — *these* sont meilleurs que *those* ; (20) les deux prisons — *the ones that* vous voyez — sont à Monaco. — *Construct, with the help of the words in Paragraphs 12 and 13, ten sentences illustrating the uses of 'ce' 'ceci,' 'cela,' 'celui,' 'voici,' and 'voilà.'*

FRENCH LESSONS  
AND  
EXERCISES



First Year's Course for Coileges

## PREFACE.



THESE lessons and exercises are to be used, with my *Short French Grammar*, during a first year's course in colleges or a second year's course in schools. I mean to construct at least one more set of the same grade, in order that the work may be varied from year to year. There are sixty lessons and thirty exercises — that is to say, materials for three recitations a week during thirty weeks. The tasks have been made short, so that about half of every hour may be left for translation. It is taken for granted that some French reading-book is used from the very outset.

The lessons consist of references to the *Grammar*. The numbers indicate paragraphs, they are not intended to include any detached subdivisions that are not expressly mentioned, but they do cover all *tables*, *paradigms*, and *examples*. Numbers in heavy-faced type represent portions that are to be *thoroughly studied*; the others stand for paragraphs that should be *carefully read*. The instructor would do well to go over each lesson with the students beforehand, pronouncing for them all the French words, and calling their attention especially to the *examples*. Classes that have used the *First Year's Course for High Schools* may substitute other irregular verbs for those given **here**.

The exercises, which illustrate the grammatical points discussed in the lessons, are based on a French story (see pages 1 to 12 in Appendix I), a selection from *Sur l'Eau*, by Guy de Maupassant. Composition exercises are to be prepared with the help of this text and the grammar, but without the use of a dictionary. The story is printed both in phonetic and in ordinary spelling, and is provided with an interlinear translation and notes; it is to be used for practice in pronunciation and for grammatical analysis.

LESSON 1.<sup>1</sup>

Vowels : 1 ; 2 ; 2, *a, b, c, d* ; 3.

## LESSON 2.

Consonants : 4 ; 4, *a* ; 4, *b, c, d, e* ; 5 ; 5, *a*.

EXERCISE 1.<sup>1</sup>

Pronounce Paragraph 1 of the French Text, which is given below in phonetic spelling :<sup>2</sup>—

(je-pril-trèd-ka-trëer pu-ra-lé-di-né-a-vè-kë-na-mi dá-la-prè-si-pó-téd-mò-na-kó. je-vU-drè-za-vwar-le-lwa-ziir de-par-lé-lòG-màd-sè-té-ta-sür-pre-ná, mwè-Grá-kë-vi-laj-de-fráás, mè-zU-lò-trUUV ë-sUV-rè-ap-sò-lü, dè-zé-vèèk, ü-né-ti-kèt-plü-sé-ré-mò-nyööz ke-sèld-fö-lwi-ka-tòrz, dè-prè-sip-dó-tò-ri-té-plü-dès-pò-tik ke-söd-Gi-yóm-de-prüs, jwè-za-ün-tò-lé-rás-ma-ñi-fik pur-lè-vis-de-lü-ma-ni-té, dð-viv-le-sUV-rè, lè-mi-nistr, lar-mé, la-ma-jis-tra-tüür, tUl-mòðd.)

## LESSON 3.

Vowels and consonants : 3, *a, b, c, d, e, f* ; 4, *a, b, c, d, e* ; 5, *a, b, c, d* ; 6 ; 6, (1), (2), (3) ; 6, (3), *a*.

## LESSON 4.

Pronunciation and spelling : 7 ; 8 ; 9 ; 10 ; 10, (1), (2) ; 10, *a* ; 11 ; 12 ; 12, *a, b* ; 13 ; 14.

## EXERCISE II.

Pronounce Paragraph 2 of the French Text, which is given below in phonetic spelling. Pupils should study this paragraph until they can read it aloud without looking at the phonetic transcription.

(sa-lü-ð-se-bð-rwâ-pa-si-fik, ki, sá-për-dè-zè-va-zyð é-dè-ré-vò-lü-syð, rè-ñá-pè sür-sð-në-röp-ti-pëpl ó-mi-lyö-dè-sé-ré-mò-ni-dün-KUUR U-sð-

<sup>1</sup> Directions for the use of these Lessons and Exercises are given in the Preface.

<sup>2</sup> See § 9 in the Grammar.

κò-sèr-vé-è-takt lè-tra-di-syò-dè-kat-ré-vé-raàs, dè-vèt-si-bèz-mè, 'éd-tut-lè-fòr-mül ü-zi-té-ó-tre-fwa ó-tur-dè-Grá-dò-mi-na-tëër. se-mò-nark-pur-tâ nè-pwè-sâ-Gi-nèr-ni-vè-di-ka-tif; é-kâ-til-ba-ni, ka-ril-ba-ni, lam-zü-rè-ta-pli-ké a-vèk-dè-mé-naj-mâ-zè-fi-ni.)

#### LESSON 5.

**Avoir** : 33, (2), INDICATIVE PRESENT, DESCRIPTIVE PAST, NARRATIVE PAST, and IMPERATIVE.

#### LESSON 6.

**Avoir** : 33, (2), FUTURE, CONDITIONAL, SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT and PAST.

#### LESSON 7.

**Avoir** : 33, (2), the whole verb. — Pick out and describe all forms of 'avoir' that occur in Paragraphs 1, 4, 5, 6, 10, 11, 12, and 13 of the French Text.

#### EXERCISE III.

Conjugate in full : **avoir le loisir de parler longuement** (a-vwar-le-lwa-zir-de-par-lé-lòg-mâ), *to have the leisure to speak at length* [French Text, Paragraph 1].

#### LESSON 8.

**Être** : 33, (3), INDICATIVE PRESENT, DESCRIPTIVE PAST, NARRATIVE PAST, and IMPERATIVE.

#### LESSON 9.

**Être** : 33, (3), FUTURE, CONDITIONAL, SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT and PAST.

#### LESSON 10.

**Être** : 33, (3), the whole verb. — Pick out and describe all forms of 'être' that occur in Paragraphs 2, 3, 9, and 12 of the French Text.

## EXERCISE IV.

Conjugate in full: **être condamné à mort** (è-tre-kò-da-né-a-mòòr), *to be condemned to death* [French Text, Paragraph 12]. In the third person singular and plural use the pronouns 'il' and 'ils,' not 'elle' and 'elles.' In all forms where the subject is plural<sup>1</sup> 'condamné' must be changed to 'condamnés' (kò-da-né).

## LESSON 11.

**Avoir and Être: 33, (2), (3), review.**—Person and number: 22; 22, *a, b*; 23; 24.

## EXERCISE V.

Conjugate in full: **je n'ai plus de moyen d'existence** (je-né-plüd-mwa-yè-dég-zis-táás) and **je suis remis aux mains d'un geôlier** (je-süi-re-mi-zó-mè-dë-jó-lyé), and give the meaning of every form. The model sentences are to be found in Paragraph 12 of the French Text. In the third person singular and plural use the pronouns 'elle' and 'elles' in the sentences containing 'avoir,' and 'il' and 'ils' in those containing 'être.'

## LESSON 12.

**Derivation of tenses: 25.**—Articles: 104; 105; 112; 112, *a*; 113; 113, (1), (2), (3), (4).—Pick out and pronounce the personal endings that are to be found in Paragraphs 1, 2, and 3 of the French Text.

## LESSON 13.

**Derivation of tenses: 25; 26.**—Articles: 105; 106; 109; 110; 111, (1), (2).—Pick out, pronounce, and describe all articles that occur in Paragraphs 1, 2, and 3 of the French Text.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'Nous' and 'ils' are plural; 'vous' may be either plural or singular. In the imperative forms 'soyons' and 'soyez' the subjects 'nous' and 'vous' are understood.

<sup>2</sup> 'Humanité' and 'armée' are feminine. Pupils are not yet expected to tell the gender of plural forms.

## EXERCISE VI.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 3 of the French Text. Prefix to every noun in Paragraphs 1, 2, and 3: (*a*) the definite article, (*b*) the definite article with 'de,' (*c*) the definite article with 'à.'

Prefix the indefinite article to every singular noun in the same paragraphs.<sup>1</sup> Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences:—

1. Nous avons . . . loisir.—2. Je suis *a* gendarme.—3. Il ne donne pas *any* preuves.—4. Il revient *a* cent fois.—5. Vous n'avez pas . . . loisir.—6. Quel *a* bon roi!—7. Je donne *some* bonnes<sup>2</sup> preuves.—8. Nous lui posons *a* mille questions.—9. Elle donne *some* preuves.—10. Il était *a* roi.—11. Vous donnez *some* preuves concluantes.<sup>3</sup>—12. Quel *a* petit peuple!—13. Je lui pose . . . questions.—14. Ils n'ont pas *a* roi.—15. Elle lui pose . . . bonnes<sup>2</sup> questions.—16. Je n'ai pas *a* ami à Monaco.—17. Il lui pose . . . questions indiscretes.<sup>4</sup>—18. Le gendarme n'a pas *any* sabre.—19. Vous ne lui posez pas . . . questions.—20. Je parle du prince de Monaco, *a* petit souverain sans *a* peuple.

## LESSON 14.

Derivation of tenses: 25; 26; 26, i., (1), (2); 26, ii., (1), (2), (3), (4).—Articles: 108; 108, (1), (2), (3).

## LESSON 15.

Derivation of tenses: 25; 26; 26, i., (1), (2); 26, ii., (1), (2), (3), (4); 26, iv., (1), (2); 26, v., (1), (2).—Articles: 108, (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6).

## EXERCISE VII.

A.—1. Describe the following verbal forms, which are to be found in Paragraphs 1, 2, and 3: *aller*, *dîner*, *avoir*, *surprenant*, *trouve*; *saluons*, *règne*, *sont*, *est*, *bannit*; *donner*, *insulta*, *rôda*,

<sup>1</sup> 'Armée,' 'autorité,' 'déveine,' 'fois,' 'France,' 'humanité,' 'paix,' 'peur,' 'Prusse' 'semaine' are feminine. The other nouns whose gender is not indicated by an article are all masculine.

<sup>2</sup> Feminine plural form of the adjective 'bon.'

<sup>3</sup> *Conclusive*.

<sup>4</sup> *Impertinent*.



**gagne, pénètre, arrête, repars, entrer, revient, pose.**<sup>1</sup>— 2. The present participle of 'aller' is 'allant' (a-lâ): give the two plural forms of the imperative.— 3. Conjugate in full the future of 'dîner' (di-né).— 4. Conjugate in full the descriptive past of the verb represented by 'surprenant' (sür-pre-nâ).— 5. Conjugate in the singular the tense to which 'trouve' (truuv), 'règne' (rèèñ), 'gagne' (gañ), 'pénètre' (pé-nètr), 'arrête' (a-rèèt) belong.— 6. The present participle of 'donner' is 'donnant' (dò-nâ): give the present indicative plural and the entire present subjunctive.— 7. Conjugate in full the tense to which 'insulta' (è-sül-ta) belongs.— 8. Conjugate in full the past subjunctive of the verb represented by 'rôda' (ró-da).— 9. Conjugate in full the conditional of 'entrer' (â-tré).— 10. Give the imperative singular of the verb represented by 'pose' (póóz).

B.— Translate the following sentences into French:—

1. Justice is mild.— 2. Go to France.— 3. He comes back Tuesdays.<sup>2</sup>— 4. She replies in French.<sup>3</sup>— 5. We are in Prussia.— 6. I am a minister.— 7. We shall speak French.<sup>3</sup>— 8. I am going away again Wednesday.<sup>4</sup>— 9. Prussia is not so big as<sup>5</sup> France.— 10. Kings<sup>6</sup> have ministers.— 11. Big Lewis replies to good William.— 12. We have good<sup>7</sup> principles.— 13. You may come in, Mr. William.— 14. The sovereign hasn't<sup>8</sup> any vices.— 15. They have some tolerance.— 16. King Lewis was an absolute sovereign.— 17. Bishops have authority.— 18. France hasn't<sup>8</sup> any king.— 19. French<sup>3</sup> is the language<sup>9</sup> of France.— 20. Humanity hasn't<sup>8</sup> any tolerance.

## LESSON 16.

**Donner: 29, the whole verb.**

## LESSON 17.

**First conjugation: 29, a, b, c, d.**

<sup>1</sup> See List of Verbs on pp. 10-12 of this book.

<sup>2</sup> *Tuesdays* = 'mardis.'

<sup>4</sup> *Wednesday* = 'mercredi.'

<sup>6</sup> The plural of 'roi' is 'rois.'

<sup>8</sup> *Hasn't* = 'n'a pas.'

<sup>3</sup> *French* = 'français.'

<sup>5</sup> *Not so big as* = 'moins grande que.'

<sup>7</sup> The masculine plural of 'bon' is 'bons.'

<sup>9</sup> *The language* = 'la langue.'

## EXERCISE VIII.

Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraph 3. Number 1 and all the sentences containing *you* are to be rendered in two ways : see §§ 23, 24.

1. Come in!—2. I stop him.—3. You gave some proofs.—4. They would come in.—5. I penetrated<sup>1</sup> into the Casino.—6. Let's expel the sovereign.—7. He will come in every week.—8. We asked him a question.—9. The policeman would stop him.—10. They were insulting the official.—11. We shall expel the gambler.—12. I should reach the Casino.—13. You are insulting the sovereign.—14. You would expel the official.—15. They reached the heart of the country.—16. I was asking him the same question.—17. A policeman stopped the gambler.—18. They will reach the frontier in thirty seconds.—19. The policeman is giving proofs.—20. You will ask him a question.—21. The gambler used to penetrate into the Casino.—22. I shall give the sabre to the policeman.—23. You were prowling around the Casino.—24. They ask him the same question every time.<sup>2</sup>—25. We are prowling around the forbidden paradise.—26. We used to stop the gambler every week.—27. We should be insulting the sovereign of the country.—28. Some gamblers<sup>3</sup> are prowling around the Casino.—29. Policemen<sup>3</sup> stop gamblers.<sup>3</sup>—30. The official was asking him questions.<sup>3</sup>

## LESSON 18.

**Rompre** : 30, the whole verb.

## LESSON 19.

**Choisir** : 31, the whole verb.

## EXERCISE IX.

Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 2 and 3. Numbers 1, 2, 3, and all sentences containing *you* are to be rendered in two ways.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 11 of this book.

<sup>2</sup> 'Every time the same question.'

<sup>3</sup> Form the plural by adding silent *s* to the singular.

1. Reign<sup>1</sup> in peace. — 2. Cross the frontier. — 3. Defend<sup>1</sup> the sovereign. — 4. Let's banish the king. — 5. Let's defend the country. — 6. You used to cross the frontier. — 7. The policeman penetrated into the court. — 8. I am defending this good king. — 9. I used to salute the policeman. — 10. They would be banishing a king. — 11. You gave the sabre to the good sovereign. — 12. The court will defend this monarch. — 13. We are penetrating into the country. — 14. I banished an official of the king. — 15. The gambler crosses the frontier every week. — 16. I shall reign over a little country. — 17. We should banish the same official. — 18. The king was reigning over his people. — 19. The great rulers salute this monarch. — 20. We defended the little country. — 21. You are banishing a good, peaceful king. — 22. They were defending the traditions of the court. — 23. The great rulers crossed the frontier of the country. — 24. We were banishing an obstinate gambler. — 25. You would reign in the midst of the ceremonies of the court. — 26. Justice preserves some formulas used of old. — 27. Monarchs<sup>2</sup> preserve traditions intact. — 28. This little people hasn't<sup>3</sup> any traditions. — 29. The court of King Louis XIV.<sup>4</sup> preserved some ceremonies used of old. — 30. France<sup>4</sup> preserves some good<sup>5</sup> traditions.

## LESSON 20.

**Three conjugations :** 28 with the fine print ; 29 ; 29, *a, b, c, d* ; 30 ; 31.— Pick out and describe all verbal forms (except 'pro-  
duisit' and 'valait') in Paragraphs 4 and 5.

## LESSON 21.

**Compound tenses :** 21 ; 21, *a* ; 34, (1), (2).— Conjugate in full 'avoir sauté' and 'être tombé.' See § 18, *a, c*.

## LESSON 22.

**Passive :** 16 ; 16, *a* ; 18, *a, c* ; 35.— Conjugate in full 'être oublié.'

<sup>1</sup> See List of Verbs on pp. 10-12 of this book.

<sup>2</sup> Form the plural by adding silent *s* to the singular.

<sup>3</sup> *Hasn't* = 'n'a pas.'

<sup>4</sup> See Paragraph 1.

<sup>5</sup> The feminine plural form of 'bon' is 'bonnes.'

## EXERCISE X.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 4. Translate the following sentences into French. Number 1 and all sentences containing *you* are to be rendered in two ways. *By* is 'par' (par). Conjugate 'rester' with 'être.' 'Négociation' is feminine.

1. Judge this case. — 2. I possess a guillotine. — 3. I should be judged by the Supreme Court. — 4. The murder has taken place. — 5. You have remained in the kingdom. — 6. I shall have been condemned by the sovereign. — 7. The Supreme Court used to meet then. — 8. You will be executed by the executioner. — 9. I had remained with the minister of foreign affairs. — 10. We shall have entered upon negotiations with the French government. — 11. You would have been executed a few years ago. — 12. An executioner and a criminal executed<sup>1</sup> the wretch. — 13. We were<sup>1</sup> condemned to death unanimously. — 14. The French government will have ratified the sentence. — 15. I should have condemned the criminal to death. — 16. We had been judged by an indignant prince. — 17. A difficulty will arise. — 18. Negotiations were being entered upon. — 19. You would have remained in the country. — 20. A murder had occurred. — 21. Negotiations have been entered upon with the prince and the minister. — 22. We should remain in the kingdom. — 23. The sentence is ratified by the sovereign. — 24. Some murders<sup>2</sup> have occurred. — 25. We are judging some exceptional<sup>2</sup> cases.<sup>2</sup> — 26. New<sup>3</sup> difficulties<sup>2</sup> would arise. — 27. Prince William<sup>4</sup> hasn't any ministers.<sup>2</sup> — 28. Criminals<sup>2</sup> are judged by courts.<sup>2</sup> — 29. The prince had entered upon negotiations to obtain some new<sup>3</sup> guillotines.<sup>2</sup> — 30. The sovereign hasn't entered upon any negotiations.

## LESSON 23.

**Voice and mood:** 16; 16, *a*; 17; 17, *a, b*; 17, *c*; 18; 18, *a, b, c, d, e*; 18, *f, g, h, i*. — Examine the use of all infinitives and the use and form of all participles in the first five paragraphs of the French Text.

<sup>1</sup> Give two translations, narrative past and present perfect. See § 21, *b*.

<sup>2</sup> Form the plural by adding silent *s* to the singular. If the singular ends in *s*, the singular and plural are alike.

<sup>3</sup> The feminine plural form of 'nouveau' is 'nouvelles.'

<sup>4</sup> See Paragraph 1.

## LESSON 24.

Mood and tense : 19 ; 19, *a, b* ; 19, *c* ; 20 ; 20, *a, b* ; 20, *c, d* ; 21 ; 21, *a, b, c, d*. — Explain all cases of the descriptive past, narrative past, and conditional in Paragraphs 4, 5, and 6.

## LESSON 25.

Derivation of tenses : 25 ; 26, all. — *Aller* : 33, (1), all.

## EXERCISE XI.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 5. Translate the following sentences into French. *If* is 'si' (si) ; the *i* of 'si' is replaced by an apostrophe before 'il' and 'ils,' but not before any other word. The relative pronoun *which*, used as object of a verb, is 'que' (ке) ; the *e* of 'que' is replaced by an apostrophe before any word beginning with a vowel sound.

1. Go<sup>1</sup> to Paris. — 2. I am going to Paris. — 3. We used to reply to the same request. — 4. His Majesty sent<sup>2</sup> the operator to Paris. — 5. The operation is going to cost him dear. — 6. Long deliberations are taking place in Paris. — 7. The king and the government are going to reply. — 8. Send<sup>1</sup> the sixteen thousand francs to the minister's office. — 9. The same request had been addressed to the king. — 10. You would go<sup>1</sup> to the minister's office. — 11. The government has answered without sending the sixteen thousand francs. — 12. You are going<sup>1</sup> to send the list of the expenses. — 13. The operator and the murderer will go to Paris. — 14. I reflected<sup>2</sup> that the murderer was not worth this price. — 15. They were going to send the wood and the operator. — 16. Let us reflect that the whole amounts to sixteen thousand francs. — 17. If the murderer were worth this price, I should go to Paris. — 18. The Republic would have addressed a request to the king's brother.<sup>3</sup> — 19. They reflected that the king would not reply to the request. — 20. I am sending the request which His Majesty has

<sup>1</sup> Give two translations (singular and plural) and tell the difference between them.

<sup>2</sup> Give three translations (narrative past, present perfect, descriptive past), and tell how they differ in meaning.

<sup>3</sup> *The brother of the king.*

addressed to the Republic. — 21. You were reflecting<sup>1</sup> that the operation was costing him dear. — 22. The king will answer by addressing a request to the Italian government. — 23. They sent<sup>2</sup> the list of the expenses, to show (to) the king that the operation had cost him dear. — 24. The government replied<sup>2</sup> to the request which the murderer addressed to His Majesty. — 25. If the operator showed himself so exacting, the whole would amount to sixteen thousand francs. — 26. His Majesty hasn't any brothers.<sup>3</sup> — 27. Deliberations had taken place. — 28. Governments<sup>3</sup> are not so exacting<sup>3</sup> as kings.<sup>3</sup> — 29. Long deliberations would have taken place. — 30. The Republic hasn't addressed any request to the king.

### LESSON 26.

**Reflexive verbs :** 45 ; 45, *a* ; 46 ; 46, *a, b* ; 47.

### EXERCISE XII.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 6. Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 4, 5, and 6. Translate *they* in two ways, masculine and feminine. To form the plural of nouns and adjectives, add silent *s* to the singular ; but if the singular ends in *s*, the singular and plural are alike. An adjective modifying a plural noun or pronoun must have the plural form.

1. Very grave cases presented themselves. — 2. Acquit yourself<sup>4</sup> of the task. — 3. We met<sup>5</sup> a few years ago. — 4. Do not show yourselves so exacting. — 5. I acquitted<sup>5</sup> myself of the task. — 6. Let's meet at the minister's office. — 7. He showed<sup>5</sup> himself very exacting. — 8. French is not so easy<sup>6</sup> as Italian. — 9. You<sup>4</sup> addressed<sup>5</sup> yourself to the king. — 10. Men are exacting. — 11. You<sup>7</sup> met<sup>5</sup> at Paris. — 12. You<sup>7</sup> have the sixteen thousand francs which I have sent. — 13. We meet to judge exceptional cases. — 14. They acquitted<sup>5</sup> themselves of a task requiring a vast experience. — 15. The murderer is

<sup>1</sup> Give two translations (singular and plural) and tell the difference between them.

<sup>2</sup> Give three translations (narrative past, present perfect, descriptive past) and tell how they differ in meaning.

<sup>3</sup> Form the plural by adding silent *s* to the singular.

<sup>4</sup> Singular form.

<sup>5</sup> Give two translations, narrative past and present perfect.

<sup>6</sup> *Easy* = 'facile.'

<sup>7</sup> Plural form.

condemning himself to death. — 16. You have acquitted yourselves of the task. — 17. The criminals have executed themselves. — 18. If I address myself to the Italian government, an entirely new case will present itself. — 19. The general is sending common soldiers. — 20. You<sup>1</sup> are not showing yourself exacting. — 21. I am an Italian. — 22. The Supreme Court has remained in Paris. — 23. If they met to ratify the sentence, the king would address himself to the French government. — 24. Do not send<sup>2</sup> any soldiers. — 25. We had met to execute the criminal. — 26. Murder is a crime.<sup>3</sup> — 27. If you<sup>2</sup> had met to enter upon negotiations, we should have sent one another some notes. — 28. You would have shown yourselves so exacting! — 29. The criminals have been executed. — 30. They would have sent each other some requests.

## LESSON 27.

Personal pronouns : 56 ; 56, *a, b* ; 57 ; 57, (1), (2), (3), (4) ; 58 ; 59 ; 60.

## LESSON 28.

Conjunctive personal pronouns : 60 ; 61 ; 61, *a* ; 62 ; 62, *a* ; 63 ; 63, *A, B* ; 63, *B*, (1), (2) ; 63, *a* ; 63, *b, c, d, e*.

## LESSON 29.

Conjunctive personal pronouns : 64 ; 64, *a* ; 64, *b* ; 65 ; 65, (1) ; 65, *a* ; 66 ; 66, *a* ; 66, *b* ; 67.

## LESSON 30.

Conjunctive personal pronouns : 68 ; 68, *A* ; 68, *a* ; 68, *b* ; 69 ; 69, *A*. — Faire : 33, (4), all.

## EXERCISE XIII.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 7.

A. — Answer the following questions in French. Give eight answers, with different subject-pronouns, to every question ; use conjunctive object-pronouns and no nouns. ‘Qui’ (*ki*) is *who*. ‘Découvert’ and ‘soumis’ are the past participles of ‘découvrir’ and ‘soumettre.’

<sup>1</sup> Singular form.<sup>2</sup> Plural form.<sup>3</sup> *Crime* = ‘crime,’ masculine.

1. Qui convoquera la Cour suprême?—2. Qui avait convoqué la cour?—3. Qui aurait soumis au prince ce cas embarrassant?—4. Qui délibère?—5. Qui a découvert un moyen pratique?<sup>1</sup>—6. Qui aura adopté la mesure?—7. Qui possède une prison?<sup>2</sup>—8. Qui installa une prison?<sup>3</sup>—9. Qui nommera le geôlier?—10. Qui propose de commuer la peine de mort en celle de prison perpétuelle?

B.—Translate the following sentences into French:—

1. Name<sup>4</sup> him to me.—2. I propose it<sup>5</sup> to her.—3. He is going there.—4. Let's give them some.—5. She proposed it<sup>6</sup> to you.<sup>4</sup>—6. It<sup>7</sup> is embarrassing.—7. Name<sup>8</sup> them to her.—8. You<sup>4</sup> have given them to me.—9. It is embarrassing to commute penalties.—10. Don't name<sup>4</sup> her to me.—11. We were giving them to him.—12. They are going to do it.<sup>7</sup>—13. Let's not give them any.—14. You<sup>8</sup> had proposed it<sup>6</sup> to them.—15. Let's go there.—16. Don't name<sup>8</sup> him to her.—17. They will propose it<sup>5</sup> to us.—18. He is the first president.—19. People would have given them to you.<sup>8</sup>—20. I was going to propose it<sup>7</sup> to him.

### LESSON 31.

Disjunctive personal pronouns: 71; 72; 73; 74; 74, (1), (2); 74, *a*, *b*; 75.

### EXERCISE XIV.

Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 5, 6, and 7. Render *you* sometimes by the singular and sometimes by the plural form; make *they* and *them* masculine in some cases and feminine in others.

1. Think of me.—2. It isn't you.—3. He goes to it.<sup>9</sup>—4. He and I have done it.—5. It was they.—6. Don't think of it.<sup>9</sup>—7. The king had addressed himself to you and to me.—8. I shall go to him.—9. It will be you.—10. *He* doesn't do it.—11. The general consulted him and her.—12. Let's think of them.—13. It wasn't I.—14. Who has deliberated—he?—15. I was thinking of it.<sup>9</sup>—16. Ad-

<sup>1</sup> Answer: *I have discovered one* ('un') *of them*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Answer: *I possess one* ('une') *of them*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Answer: *I fitted up one* ('une') *of them*, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Singular.

<sup>5</sup> Masculine.

<sup>6</sup> Feminine.

<sup>7</sup> Indefinite.

<sup>8</sup> Plural.

<sup>9</sup> See § 75.



dress yourself to me. — 17. *I* haven't consulted them. — 18. You and he will do it. — 19. Who is thinking of her? — 20. They are men. — 21. He showed me to them. — 22. Do it for me. — 23. She has addressed herself to us. — 24. Who will do it, you or<sup>1</sup> I? — 25. They will not think of us. — 26. I shall show you to him. — 27. They have proposed it to you and to us. — 28. *They* don't think of it.<sup>2</sup> — 29. She would do it for you. — 30. The operation would cost the king and me very dear.

## LESSON 32.

**Personal pronouns** : review the whole chapter.

## EXERCISE XV.

Translate into French the following sentences based on the first seven paragraphs of the French Text : —

1. It's good. — 2. You are thinking of it. — 3. It is good to think of one's self. — 4. He is the brother of the minister of foreign affairs. — 5. It is necessary to think of him. — 6. Give me some. — 7. It isn't they: it's I. — 8. I shall give you some. — 9. Let's not go there. — 10. I am showing them to him. — 11. He was showing them the sabre. — 12. You and he have given me some. — 13. They were going there. — 14. Give it to him. — 15. We are sending her to you. — 16. Send her two francs. — 17. People consult the minister. — 18. I haven't given him any. — 19. I address myself to you. — 20. Give them to me. — 21. You have been spoken of.<sup>3</sup> — 22. Don't give it to her. — 23. Show him to me. — 24. She sends him sixteen thousand francs. — 25. I should have spoken of it to you and to him. — 26. We should have given it to them. — 27. He has shown them to us. — 28. She sends him there. — 29. They have addressed themselves to us. — 30. Show her the two francs: they belong to me.

## LESSON 33.

**Interrogation** : 36 ; 38 ; 44.

## LESSON 34.

**Interrogation** : 36 ; 37 ; 37, A, B with (1) and (2), C with (1) and (2) and (3) ; 37, a, b.

<sup>1</sup> Or = 'ou.'

<sup>2</sup> See § 75.

<sup>3</sup> See § 64, a.

## EXERCISE XVI.

A.— Make the following sentences interrogative. See Paragraphs 1 and 2. Give two forms for every sentence.

1. Je pris le train. — 2. Tu as diné. — 3. Elle serait allée à Monaco. — 4. Il voudrait y aller. — 5. Nous parlions de cet Etat. — 6. Vous en aviez parlé. — 7. Ils trouvent un ami à Monaco. — 8. Elles l'y trouveront. — 9. Elle l'a trouvé. — 10. Nous ne le trouvons pas. — 11. Je parle de l'armée. — 12. On en parle. — 13. Il en a parlé. — 14. Ce bon roi régnera en paix. — 15. Le peuple ne serait pas heureux. — 16. La cour aura conservé toutes les traditions. — 17. Les traditions ont été conservées intactes. — 18. La formule était usitée autrefois. — 19. Ces monarques ne sont point sanguinaires. — 20. La mesure a été appliquée.

B.— Translate the following sentences into French. See Paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 4. *Who* and *whom* are 'qui' (ki); the adjective *what* is 'quel' (kèl); the pronoun *what* is 'qu'est-ce qui' (kès-ki) when used as subject, 'que' (ke) when used as object of a verb.

1. Who doesn't return? — 2. What do you give? — 3. What gambler do they stop? — 4. Who has gone to dine at Monaco? — 5. What were we doing? — 6. Whom does he banish? — 7. What policeman has asked him a question? — 8. Whom did they insult? — 9. What had occurred? — 10. Whom were they expelling?

## LESSON 35.

Possessive adjectives: 76; 77; 78; 78, *a*; 79; 79, *a, b*; 80; 80, *a, b, c, d*.

## EXERCISE XVII.

A.— Prefix the possessive adjectives of all the different persons to every noun (except proper names) in Paragraphs 1 and 4. 'Appareil,' 'arrêt,' 'avis,' 'bourreau,' 'état,' 'lieu' are masculine; 'armée,' 'autorité,' 'guillotine,' 'humanité,' 'mort,' 'unanimité' are feminine.

B.— Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 2 and 3. *From* is 'de.'

1. The policeman is saluting his king. — 2. Has her king banished her? — 3. The good king was reigning over his happy little people. — 4. Has her happy little people preserved intact all the traditions of the court? — 5. The king and his court have preserved some formulas used of old. — 6. Hasn't her court preserved any traditions? — 7. The gambler has given her his proofs. — 8. Would she have given them her proofs? — 9. The sovereign had reached the heart of his country. — 10. Hasn't she been expelled from her country?

C. — Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 5, 6, and 7. The word for *head* is feminine. *The hand* and *the tooth* are 'la main' (la-mè) and 'la dent' (la-dé).

1. Man proposes. — 2. The jailer took her hand. — 3. The general hasn't any men. — 4. I have shown him the Supreme Court, but I haven't shown him its president. — 5. The soldiers had cut off<sup>1</sup> her head. — 6. They would have broken<sup>2</sup> your neck. — 7. Has the general lost<sup>3</sup> his head? — 8. The soldier has broken<sup>2</sup> one of my teeth. — 9. I should have thrown<sup>4</sup> it at his head. — 10. Has she broken<sup>2</sup> her neck?

## LESSON 36.

Negation : 36 ; 43 ; 44.

## LESSON 37.

Negation : 39 ; 39, (1), (2), (3) ; 39, *a, b, c, d, e* ; 40 ; 40, A ; 40, A, (1), (2) ; 40, B ; 40, B, (1) ; 41 ; 41, A, B ; 41, (1), (2), (3) ; 41, *a, b, c* ; 42 ; 42, (1), (2).

## EXERCISE XVIII.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 8.

A. — Make the following sentences negative : —

1. Tout alla bien. — 2. Le captif dormait. — 3. Nous en faisons autant. — 4. Vous regardez passer les voyageurs. — 5. Je suis économe. — 6. C'est là son moindre défaut. — 7. Tu t'es fait rendre compte des dépenses. — 8. La liste en sera longue. — 9. Ils lui avaient remis la note. — 10. Le traitement de ce dernier aurait grevé lourdement le budget du souverain.

<sup>1</sup> Cut off = coupé.

<sup>2</sup> Broken = cassé.

<sup>3</sup> Lost = perdu.

<sup>4</sup> Thrown = jeté.

B. — Turn the following statements into negative questions : —

1. J'ai dormi sur une paille. — 2. Vous en aviez fait autant. —
3. Nous les aurions regardés passer. — 4. Ils s'en faisaient rendre compte. — 5. On la lui remit.

C. — Translate the following sentences into French : —

1. Nothing went well. — 2. I have hardly looked at them. — 3. We propose<sup>1</sup> not to deliver<sup>2</sup> any more to him. — 4. Nobody would look at you. — 5. You would never have rendered him an account of it. —
6. He was proposing to me not to make<sup>2</sup> any list at all. — 7. They have given her nothing. — 8. People had proposed<sup>1</sup> to hand<sup>2</sup> him only the note. — 9. He had looked at nobody. — 10. The guardian has no more chairs. — 11. She has looked only at the prince. — 12. Will you render me an account of it? Never! — 13. You will not have given any to anybody. — 14. Never did she sleep in her chair. —
15. We hadn't given them any chair.

#### LESSON 38.

Falloir, pouvoir, savoir : 33, (5), (6), (7).

#### LESSON 39.

Possessive pronouns : 81 ; 81, *a* ; 82 ; 83. — Impersonal verbs : 48 ; 48, *a* ; 49, (1), (2), (3), *a*, *b*.

#### LESSON 40.

Falloir : 53 ; 53, (1), (2) ; 54 ; 54, *a* ; 55 ; 55, *a*.

#### EXERCISE XIX.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 9.

A. — Substitute for every noun in Paragraph 8 the possessive pronouns of all the different persons. Use the possessive *adjectives* of all the different persons with every noun in Paragraph 9. 'Compte,' 'entretien,' 'frais,' 'mois,' 'voyageur,' are masculine ; 'dépense,' 'fonction,' 'mesure,' are feminine.

<sup>1</sup> See Paragraph 7.

<sup>2</sup> See List of Verbs.

B.—Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 8 and 9 :—

1. You mustn't run away.<sup>1</sup>—2. Will they be able to suppress this expense? I don't know.—3. We have had to take measures.—4. Can the captive sleep on his straw mattress? I can't sleep on mine.—5. We must hand it to her.—6. Couldn't the prisoner run away?<sup>2</sup> No, he couldn't.<sup>2</sup>—7. She had to consult the president.<sup>1</sup>—8. He didn't know how to solve the problem. Would you know how to solve it?—9. They would have had to sleep on a straw mattress.—10. Is there a prison in your state? There is none in hers.—11. The note was theirs.—12. Must I render him an account of it?<sup>1</sup> Yes, you must.—13. Were there no travellers before his door?—14. He needed a chair: did you invite him to take yours?—15. Was there a straw mattress in your prison? There was none in his.—16. The chair isn't yours: it's mine.—17. I should have needed a straw mattress.—18. There will be a chair before her door.—19. He will have to suppress this expense.<sup>1</sup>—20. There is no chair in their prison. Is there a straw mattress in ours?

#### LESSON 41.

**Auxiliary verbs:** 50, (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7), (8), (9), (10), (11); 51; 51, (1), (2); 52, (1), (2), (3).

#### EXERCISE XX.

Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 8 and 9. For 'venir,' see § 33, (9).

1. Have the prince and the chief justice been consulted?—2. I was sleeping on a straw mattress.—3. Did the minister suppress your office?—4. We were going to run away.—5. Some travellers had just passed by.—6. Did the president have the note handed to her?—7. I must<sup>3</sup> pass six months in your state.—8. Wasn't I willing to hand her my bill?—9. She was watching the travellers pass by.—10. They don't consult me.—11. The prince had the office of jailer suppressed.—12. The prisoner is going to watch himself all alone.

<sup>1</sup> Give two translations (infinitive and subjunctive) of this sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Translate this sentence in four ways, using different forms of the verb 'pouvoir.'

<sup>3</sup> Give three translations, two with 'falloir' and one with 'devoir.'

— 13. They had just handed us a note. — 14. Shall I have to<sup>1</sup> take measures? — 15. I am willing to render you an account of it. — 16. We were passing in front of the door. — 17. The captive has just run away. — 18. We don't invite him to consult us. — 19. It may last forever. — 20.<sup>2</sup> Does the prince know how to do it? — 21. There would have been no expense. — 22. You used to sleep all day. — 23. I had just consulted him. — 24. I didn't want to sleep. — 25. The minister will have to<sup>2</sup> suppress this expense. — 26. They are having an account of their expenditures rendered to them. — 27. Could you have solved the problem? — 28. The president had to<sup>2</sup> render them an account of it. — 29. I should have liked to run away. — 30. I used to consult my minister, who<sup>3</sup> would render me an account of my expenditures.

## LESSON 42.

Conjugation : 25 ; 26, all. — Tenir, venir, vouloir : 33, (8), (9), (10).

## LESSON 43.

Relative pronouns : 84 ; 84, *a, b* ; 85 ; 85, (1) ; 85, *a, b* ; 86 ; 86, (1), (2), *a* ; 87 ; 87, *a*.

## EXERCISE XXI.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 10. Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 8, 9, and 10. 'Aliments' is masculine. See § 63, *b*.

1. This is the problem that we must solve. — 2. I was eating what you had carried to the palace. — 3. That is an expenditure of which you will render me an account. — 4. Watch the travellers who are coming. — 5. I have a friend on whom I can count.<sup>4</sup> — 6. That is the door before which they will pass. — 7. There are some servants in the palace. — 8. These are the travellers whom I was watching. — 9. Eat what you have. — 10. You must suppress the expenditures of which I have made you a list. — 11. It is the prince who is sleeping. — 12. The travellers to whom you used to bring victuals are before the door. — 13. These are expenses which you don't think of. — 14. The

<sup>1</sup> Give three translations, two with 'falloir' and one with 'devoir.'

<sup>2</sup> Use 'falloir.'

<sup>3</sup> 'Qui' (κί).

<sup>4</sup> *To count* = 'compter' (κὸ-τέ).

travellers would not have run away. — 15. There will be no servants in the prison. — 16. She will come to the palace at meal-times. — 17. There was, in the prison, a captive whom they had asked to run away. — 18. Let us eat what is before us. — 19. I have consulted the minister who has come to the palace. — 20. The sovereign, to whom you must render an account of it, has come to consult me. — 21. It is a retreat in which there is a straw mattress. — 22. Think of the jailer whose office you have suppressed. — 23. The sovereign doesn't know what he is going to do. — 24. The culprit would have come to eat in the prison. — 25. You didn't know what was happening.<sup>1</sup> — 26. Come to the palace: you mustn't neglect to bring me my victuals. — 27. You couldn't run away. — 28. They will bring you the victuals you are thinking of. — 29. They have just regained their liberty. — 30. We want to carry him some food.

## LESSON 44.

**Irregular verbs:** 25; 26, all; 32; 32, *a*, *b*. — **Devoir:** 32, *Devoir*.

## LESSON 45.

**Demonstratives:** 96; 96, *a*; 97; 98; 98, *a*, *b*; 99; 99, *a*, *b*, *c*; 100; 100, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*; 101; 102.

## LESSON 46.

**Demonstratives:** 96; 97; 98; 99; 100; 101; 102; 103; 103, *A*; 103, *A*, (1), (2), (3); 103, *c*.

## EXERCISE XXII.

**A.** — Use the demonstrative adjective with all nouns in Paragraph 8. Use with all nouns in Paragraph 9 the demonstrative adjective and the suffixes 'ci' and 'là.' See Exercise XIX.

**B.** — Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 8, 9, and 10. To form the plural of nouns, add silent *s* to the singular.

1. This is the straw mattress on which I sleep. — 2. Do you sleep on this one or on that one? — 3. Look at that convict: that's the

<sup>1</sup> *To happen* = 'se passer.'

prisoner who ran away. — 4. These are the problems that we must solve. — 5. Must we solve these or those? — 6. This is the office of jailer — the one that has been suppressed. — 7. That is a prisoner whom you will have to watch. — 8. Shall I have to watch this one or that one? — 9. Let's look at this note: this is the one that he handed to the prince. — 10. Those are some friends whom he has invited. — 11. Has he invited these or those? — 12. These servants — those of the palace and those of the prison — bring me food. — 13. Here I am! This is I. — 14. We ought to have suppressed this expenditure — the one you have just rendered me an account of. — 15. Do this; don't do that. — 16. Those offices have been suppressed — that of watchman and that of jailer. — 17. This note is mine: it's the one you gave me. — 18. This cannot last; that may last forever. — 19. He had to eat with a friend — the one who had remained in the palace. — 20. He who watches himself all alone can hardly fail to escape.

#### LESSON 47.

Dire, écrire, lire : 32, Dire, Écrire, Lire.<sup>1</sup>

#### LESSON 48.

Adjectives, feminine : 114 ; 115 ; 115, (1), (2), (3) ; 115, (4).  
— Agreement : 117 ; 117, *c* ; 118 ; 119, (1), (2) ; 119, (2), *a, b* ; 120 ; 120, *b*.

#### LESSON 49.

Adjectives, plural : 116 ; 116, (1), (2), (3), (4), (5). — Position : 121 ; 121, *a, b* ; 122 ; 122, (1), *a* ; 122, (1), *b* ; 122, (2), *a, b, c, d* ; 122, (3), *a, b, c*.

#### EXERCISE XXIII.

A. — Explain the agreement of every adjective in Paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10. Give the masculine and feminine, singular and plural, of the same adjectives (the masculine singular form of 'cérémonieuse,' 'dernières,' 'despotiques,' 'douce,'

<sup>1</sup> 'Dire' = to say or to tell, 'écrire' = to write, 'lire' = to read.



'étrangères,' 'inconnus,' 'infinis,' 'intactes,' 'longue,' 'perpétuelle,' 'relatifs' is 'cérémonieux,' 'dernier,' 'despotique,' 'doux,' 'étranger,' 'inconnu,' 'infini,' 'intact,' 'long,' 'perpétuel,' 'relatif'). — Give all the forms of 'caduc,' *falling*, 'fou,' *crazy*, and 'gras,' *fat*. — Use the definite article and the proper form of 'beau,' 'nouveau,' and 'vieux' before each one of the following nouns : 'état,' 'prince,' 'prison,' 'états,' 'princes,' 'prisons.'

B. — Translate into French : —

1. France is beautiful. — 2. The people and the court will be happy. — 3. He is a tall man. — 4. It is embarrassing not to know French. — 5. This state is not old. — 6. We shall take measures to let<sup>1</sup> you know what is being done<sup>2</sup> at Monaco. — 7. The chair and the straw mattress were small. — 8. That is a task of which they could not acquit themselves. — 9. Travellers are not always economical. — 10. Will they not take any measures to accomplish what they wish? — 11. This indignant gambler will take the four o'clock train. — 12. The Italian court has preserved some old traditions. — 13. I am a minister. — 14. That will cause great disturbances in the state. — 15. Read what you have written. — 16. Aren't you a Frenchman? — 17. This great man and his minister are very young. — 18. Were they writing what you said to them? — 19. Is justice mild or<sup>3</sup> vindictive? — 20. The man whom you have expelled is an old friend of our good minister

#### LESSON 50.

Adjectives, feminine and plural : 114 ; 115 ; 115, (1), (2), (3), (4) ; 116 ; 116, (1), (2), (3), (4), (5). — Comparison : 123 ; 123, (1), (2) ; 123, *a, b, c, d, e* ; 124 ; 124, *a, b* ; 125 ; 125, *a*.

#### LESSON 51.

Adjective phrases of quantity : 126 ; 126, (1), (2), (3), (4), *a, b, c*. — Nouns : 129 ; 129, *a, b, c* ; 130 ; 130, (1), (2), (3) ; 130, (4) ; 131, *a, b* ; 132 ; 132, *a* ; 132, (1), (2) ; 132, (3) ; 132, (3), *a, b*.

<sup>1</sup> Use 'faire.'

<sup>2</sup> Use reflexive construction.

<sup>3</sup> Or = 'ou.'

## EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—Use the indefinite article and the proper form of the adjective ‘bas,’ ‘blanc,’ ‘bon,’ ‘épais,’ ‘gros,’ ‘long,’ ‘pareil’ with ‘mur,’ m., *wall*, and ‘muraille,’ f., *wall*. Use the word for *some* and the proper form of ‘doux’ and ‘frais’ with: ‘vin,’ m., *wine*; ‘eau,’ f., *water*; ‘melons,’ m., *melons*; ‘poires,’ f., *pears*.

B.—Pronounce and study Paragraph 11. Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 10 and 11. ‘Franc’ is masculine.

1. It’s the nicest family in<sup>1</sup> Monaco. — 2. How much did you win? — 3. This food is better than the jailer’s. — 4. Has he eaten many walnuts<sup>2</sup>? — 5. There are not knives<sup>3</sup> enough: you must bring us some. — 6. My nephews<sup>4</sup> have just risked a five franc piece.<sup>5</sup> — 7. Our dinners are worse than the servants’. — 8. You had just won more than five francs at the Casino. — 9. They will bring us but little food. — 10. I have risked less than a franc. — 11. The convicts have more food than the jailer’s horses.<sup>6</sup> — 12. The situation is growing more awkward every day.<sup>7</sup> — 13. She has less liberty than he. — 14. The culprit’s friend is the silliest cook in<sup>1</sup> the palace. — 15. The judge hasn’t so many servants as<sup>8</sup> the jailer. — 16. They have few friends; *I* have many more. — 17. You used to eat less than I. — 18. The convicts have as much food as the servants. — 19. He has saved her many<sup>9</sup> journeys. — 20. I am going to dine at the judge’s. — 21. The criminals eat more than the servants. — 22. He does it much better than I. — 23. We have too many judges. — 24. How many francs have they won? — 25. I have had enough of it. — 26. The cook’s friends have eaten too much. — 27. The judge’s horses<sup>6</sup> are better than mine. — 28. The jailer’s nephew<sup>4</sup> has won many<sup>9</sup> times. — 29. It is worse than that. — 30. The convicts haven’t food enough.

## LESSON 52.

Partir, valoir, voir : 32, Partir, Valoir, Voir.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use ‘de.’

<sup>2</sup> *Walnut* = ‘noix,’ f.

<sup>3</sup> *Knife* = ‘couteau,’ m.

<sup>4</sup> *Nephew* = ‘neveu.’

<sup>5</sup> *Piece* = ‘pièce,’ f.

<sup>6</sup> *Horse* = ‘cheval,’ m.

<sup>7</sup> *All the days*.

<sup>8</sup> *As* = ‘que.’

<sup>9</sup> Translate *many* in two ways.

<sup>10</sup> ‘Partir’ = *to go away*, ‘valoir,’ = *to be worth*, ‘voir’ = *to see*.

## LESSON 53.

Interrogatives : 89 ; 89, *a* ; 90 ; 90, (1), (2) ; 91 ; 91, *a* ; 92 ; 93 ; 94 ; 94, *a*.

## LESSON 54.

Interrogatives : 90 ; 90, (1), (2) ; 91 ; 92 ; 93 ; 94 ; 95 ; 95, *a, c, d, e*.

## EXERCISE XXV.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 12. Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 11 and 12 :—

1. Who<sup>1</sup> is it? — 2. Which doors have you shut? — 3. Whose are the States of Monaco? — 4. What<sup>1</sup> is it? — 5. She doesn't know which hotel is the best. — 6. Whose five francs are these? — 7. Who<sup>1</sup> is going away? — 8. What a country! — 9. The five francs are mine. — 10. What is that worth? — 11. Whom did you see<sup>2</sup>? — 12. Which is the hotel in which he treats himself to a dinner? — 13. I shall tell you whose door you have shut. — 14. What does my guardian see? — 15. These are the judges to whom you have replied. — 16. We knew who had found it. — 17. What was seen<sup>3</sup>? — 18. Who has gone away? — 19. Is this the prison to which she had returned? — 20. What a situation! — 21. By whom have the prisoners been judged? — 22. What states do they want to drive him from? — 23. I don't know what will become of him. — 24. What<sup>4</sup> are the States of Monaco? — 25. They will tell us whom you have condemned. — 26. He replied to what I had said to him. — 27. Which are the states we must go out of? — 28. What<sup>1</sup> will become of them? — 29. Would he tell me what had been decided? — 30. These are the hands into which you have given her. — 31. Do you know whom you have been condemned by? — 32. What has been decided? — 33. I didn't know what the Casino was. — 34. What does he shut the door of? — 35. The judges don't know what to do. — 36. What<sup>1</sup> is the Casino? — 37. They will tell me what would have been decided. — 38. Did you know what the convict risked his five francs on? — 39. I hardly know what to reply. — 40. Do you know what he said to me?

<sup>1</sup> Translate in two ways.

<sup>2</sup> Give three different tenses, and explain the differences in meaning and use.

<sup>3</sup> Use active construction with 'on.'

<sup>4</sup> Translate in four ways.

## LESSON 55.

Interrogation and negation: review pages 50-62 of the *Grammar*.

## EXERCISE XXVI.

Pronounce and study Paragraph 13. Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 11, 12, and 13. See § 56, *a*.

1. He hadn't any more. — 2. They will hardly accept. — 3. I have only a single means of subsistence. — 4. She raises good vegetables. — 5. We no longer have any guardians. — 6. You have hardly any. — 7. They will offer him only six hundred francs. — 8. She has hardly any vegetables. — 9. They have accepted only five hundred francs. — 10. I shall never begin again to raise vegetables. — 11. Is the criminal going out of the States of Monaco?<sup>1</sup> — 12. What will they offer the culprit? — 13. Where<sup>2</sup> does the criminal live? — 14. The prince gives orders not to take any measures at all. — 15. The criminal has not been executed. — 16. Nothing is decided. — 17. Princes always<sup>3</sup> fly into a terrible rage. — 18. Will you accept? Never! — 19. There is no<sup>4</sup> walled lot in the States of Monaco. — 20. Doesn't the convict answer the judges?<sup>1</sup> — 21. Who has hired a little walled lot? — 22. What did the prince do? — 23. They will give orders to him never to come back there. — 24. I haven't taken anything away from them. — 25. Nobody undergoes his punishment faithfully. — 26. I sometimes go into the Casino. — 27. Who has driven them from the country? Not I! — 28. There was no<sup>4</sup> Supreme Court in my former sovereign's state. — 29. Do the prisoners shut the door carefully?<sup>1</sup> — 30. What measures did they have to take? — 31. The judges gave orders to them not to take any. — 32. Despise nobody. — 33. He has answered them well. — 34. It is the Supreme Court and not the prince that has condemned her. — 35. Does the jailer win only five francs?<sup>1</sup> — 36. I don't want to drive anybody away. — 37. You don't raise any vegetables. — 38. She had told everything.<sup>5</sup> — 39. Did the judge take her guardian away from her?<sup>1</sup> — 40. He is asked<sup>6</sup> to come back only once. — 41. I haven't hired any walled lot. — 42. We have won too much. — 43. She

<sup>1</sup> Translate this sentence in two ways.

<sup>3</sup> *Always* = 'toujours' (tu-juur).

<sup>5</sup> *Everything* = 'tout.'

<sup>2</sup> *Where* = 'où' (u).

<sup>4</sup> Translate in three ways.

<sup>6</sup> Use 'on' and active voice.

raised only vegetables. — 44. Didn't the judges drive him from the country at all?<sup>1</sup> — 45. You never stay there. — 46. I give orders not to take any one away from him. — 47. The judges haven't condemned anybody. — 48. I should have won only five francs. — 49. I have never gone into it. — 50. "I shall never accept your pension," he replied.

## LESSON 56.

Subjunctive: 19, *c*; 41, *a, b*; 53; 53, (2); 54; 84, *a*; 91, *b*; 95, *f*.

## EXERCISE XXVII.

Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 11, 12, and 13.

1. Let them deliberate! — 2. I shall not execute anybody who has not been condemned. — 3. You must<sup>2</sup> go and take a walk. — 4. Although the prince has ordered it, we shall not meet any more. — 5. They will not want me to do it. — 6. You don't think the situation is awkward. — 7. We had met there five times. — 8. Let her return to her prison! — 9. The prince gives orders not to execute anybody. — 10. We had ~~to~~<sup>2</sup> go and live abroad. — 11. Although you had said nothing, I knew you were going to meet. — 12. The judges wanted him to go out of the country. — 13. I am glad he has returned. — 14. He goes in without<sup>3</sup> shutting the door. — 15. If you had<sup>4</sup> ordered it, they would have<sup>4</sup> driven him from the country. — 16. Whatever they do, they will not make me go out of my prison. — 17. I must<sup>2</sup> come back to my hotel. — 18. It is good that criminals are executed. — 19. The prince wants us to meet at Monaco. — 20. It is not decided that the criminal be asked to go out of the country. — 21. They would have begun again to deliberate. — 22. Had he accepted, I should have<sup>4</sup> won six hundred francs. — 23. Whatever your punishment is, undergo it faithfully. — 24. He had to<sup>2</sup> come back to Monaco. — 25. Although I have just condemned him, he will never be executed. — 26. I should have wanted you to stay here. — 27. The prince gave orders that they should offer a pension to the culprit. — 28. She went out instead of<sup>5</sup> answering. — 29. If she should stay here, we should go and live abroad. — 30. The

<sup>1</sup> Translate this sentence in two ways.

<sup>2</sup> Use ' falloir ' with two different constructions.

<sup>3</sup> Without = ' sans.'

<sup>4</sup> Translate in two ways, using different moods.

<sup>5</sup> Instead of = ' au lieu de ' (ô-lyöd).

convicts must<sup>1</sup> answer their judges. — 31. It's the best hotel that I have found. — 32. The judges would have given orders that we should meet again. — 33. Your situation is more awkward than ours. — 34. If I risked five francs, I should win. — 35. The prince would have had to<sup>1</sup> dine at a hotel. — 36. I think this hotel is the best in<sup>2</sup> Monaco. — 37. His punishment is more terrible than mine. — 38. If you should return, they would offer you a good dinner. — 39. The court will have to<sup>1</sup> meet again. — 40. We feared<sup>3</sup> you would go out. — 41. I had just hired a hotel. — 42. I told her he would stay. — 43. The prisoners would have to<sup>1</sup> meet. — 44. You feared<sup>3</sup> she would not go out. — 45. They haven't vegetables enough. — 46. I have been told that you would take a walk. — 47. I fear<sup>3</sup> they will go as far as Monte Carlo. — 48. You have just driven away many criminals. — 49. Don't you fear<sup>3</sup> that he will return? — 50. I raise nothing but vegetables.

### LESSON 57.

**Personal pronouns :** review Chapter 3 of the *Grammar*.

### EXERCISE XXVIII.

Translate into French the following sentences based on Paragraphs 9, 10, 11, 12, 13. For the principal parts of 'offrir,' see § 32, Offrir.

1. His guardian had just been taken<sup>4</sup> from him. — 2. These vegetables belong to the prisoner; he is raising them for himself. — 3. Isn't she happy? No, she isn't. Is she in France? Yes, she is. — 4. I saw him and his family; they had stayed at Monaco. — 5. He is always thinking of them; will they come back to him? — 6. Here are some vegetables: do you want any? The prisoners haven't had any, but I'll offer them some. — 7. He who risks nothing, wins nothing. — 8. The criminal will belong to us: he is going to offer himself to me. — 9. They told me they hadn't any food, but it seems<sup>5</sup> they have a great deal; who has been giving them some? — 10. People say he hasn't given the prince anything. — 11. Can't you introduce<sup>6</sup> me to

<sup>1</sup> Use ' falloir.'

<sup>2</sup> Use ' de.'

<sup>3</sup> To fear = ' craindre' (κρέδδρ): see § 32, Craindre.

<sup>4</sup> Use ' on' and the active voice.

<sup>5</sup> To seem = ' paraître': see § 32, Paraître.

<sup>6</sup> To introduce = présenter.

her? It's five o'clock.<sup>1</sup>—12. Give it to me: I want to have<sup>2</sup> her see it. She would never have treated herself to it.—13. Who wrote to him and his friends? Not I!—14. Give me some! You have let<sup>3</sup> me see them, but you haven't given them to me.—15. I shall invite them to come here, and shall offer them a good dinner.—16. It was he; *I* had not stayed.—17. Place<sup>4</sup> yourself there. I heard<sup>5</sup> them say, "Let's run away!" Here is the jailer; speak<sup>6</sup> of it to him.—18. The convicts shall eat no more vegetables: that is an expense that must be suppressed.—19. *You* had not come back; it was they.—20. Has she given them to you? The prince will not take them; don't offer them to him.—21. This can't last forever; I have only five francs.—22. It is we; *he* hasn't come here.—23. Tell him so! No, what am I saying? Don't tell him! Don't do it!—24. They are the prince's servants; they told me so themselves.—25. *He* didn't give it to you: don't offer it to me!—26. Do you see this prison? You may go into it. It seems<sup>7</sup> there is nobody in it; the convicts have just gone out of it.—27. Have you seen them executed? Who has not seen them?—28. This office isn't theirs; I have given it to you and him.—29. I have offered them to you. Here is the prince! Ought *I* to offer them to him?—30. I was not thinking of him nor of her; I was thinking of myself.—31. Has she heard<sup>5</sup> it said? To whom has she spoken<sup>6</sup> of it?—32. I condemn myself; *you* don't condemn me.—33. I shall have<sup>8</sup> them read it. Don't they know how to read?—34. Don't think of it any more: *he* will not run away; it would be too difficult.—35. There are too many prisoners in this prison; nobody shall go into it to-day.—36. He and she would have run away, if they had not been watched.<sup>9</sup>—37. She has arrived at Monaco to-day, but she will stay there only five days.—38. They are carrying some food for me and my friends.—39. We shall have to suppress many expenditures: what measures shall we have to take?—40. They never could have run away.—41. Are you and he going to the Casino? That's good! There he is; he is your best friend.—42. Here is the hotel we were speaking of; let's go into it.—43. Tell me what is decided. What are they going to do? What has been ordered?—44. Did you see that prisoner? He is the Prince of Monaco. He and I are going

<sup>1</sup> *O'clock* = 'heures.'

<sup>2</sup> Use 'faire.'

<sup>3</sup> *To let* = 'laisser.'

<sup>4</sup> *To place* = 'mettre': see § 32, Mettre.

<sup>5</sup> *To hear* = 'entendre.'

<sup>6</sup> *To speak* = 'parler.'

<sup>7</sup> *To seem* = 'paraître': see § 32, Paraître.

<sup>8</sup> Use 'faire.'

<sup>9</sup> Use 'on' and the active voice.

to run away. — 45. Here are the convicts he wanted to speak<sup>1</sup> to; does he want to see them? — 46. Don't you see it's raining<sup>2</sup>? It would be difficult to run away to-day. Let's not think of it. — 47. What can you do for me? I don't know what I want. — 48. It is difficult to fasten the door on the inside; you will never be able to do it. — 49. Whom have you seen? Which are the prisoners whom you wanted to see? — 50. We have seen her at the hotel, and have told her everything.

### LESSON 58.

**Numerals :** 127, (1) ; 127, (1), *a, b, c, d, e* ; 127, (2) ; 127, (2), *a, b, c, d* ; 127, (3) ; 127, (3), *a* ; 127, (4) ; 128 ; 128, (1), (2), (3), (4), *a*.

### EXERCISE XXIX.

See Paragraphs 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13. 'Un étranger' means *a foreigner*.

A. — Pronounce the following phrases and sentences : —

1 pailleuse, 3 tentatives, 5 familles, 7 arrêts, 8 petits enclos, 9 chaises, 2 mains, 10 étrangers, 4 repas, 12 mois, 20 hôtels, 5 enclos, j'en ai 10, 1 défaut, 3 anciens souverains, 5 jeunes étrangers, 7 heureux petits princes, 9 aides de cuisine, 2 petits amis, 4 états, 15 jours, 6 hôtels, 8 amis, 20 captifs, 10 mois, tu en avais 5, 1 arrêt, 2 aides de cuisine, il en eut 7, 6 états, 7 ministres, nous en aurons 6, 3 enclos, vous en auriez 9, 8 jours, 6 courses, ils en ont eu 8, 9 états.

B. — Pronounce the following phrases, and write out the French names of the numbers : —

80 minutes, 71 condamnés, 100 questions, 76 juges, 200 voyageurs, 81 jours, 80 arrêts, 93 captifs, 24 palais, 100 états, 91 fois, 47 gardiens, 94 hôtels, 51 questions, 98 amis, 685 prisonniers, 302 francs, 99 étrangers, 785 amis, 502 hôtels, 987 francs, 897 fois, 400 amis, 1,000,000 jours, 2435 francs, 1000 fois, 3,000,000 francs.

C. — Prefix to the words 'jour' and 'fois' the definite article and all the ordinal numerals up to 'vingt-sixième.' Use two different words for *second*.

<sup>1</sup> To speak = 'parler.'

<sup>2</sup> To rain = 'pleuvoir': see § 32, Pleuvoir.



D. — Translate the following sentences into French. See §§ 16, *b*; 17, *a, b, c*; 18, *e, f, g, h, i*; 20, *c*; 21, *b, d*; 47, (2).

1. She went away the eighth of July.<sup>1</sup>— 2. The prince's rage is more terrible than mine. — 3. Henry<sup>2</sup> the Second did not let<sup>3</sup> himself be driven from the country. — 4. Do you see that hotel? Go in there, and treat yourself to a good dinner. — 5. Have you a chair? I have one. — 6. When we saw them coming, we went away. — 7. They had Charles<sup>4</sup> the First executed. — 8. What's that? It's a prisoner running away. — 9. Which vegetables have you accepted — the cook's, or my friend's? — 10. When the prince and his family come here, I shall go away. — 11. They drove him out of the country by asking him to go out of the States of Monaco. — 12. We shall both go away the 11th of July.<sup>1</sup>— 13. He deliberates while cultivating his vegetables. — 14. The chair and the mattress are both in front of the door. — 15. He came and told me that a great many convicts were going away. — 16. Will he be able to make them accept it? — 17. When are they going away? They have been here for<sup>5</sup> six months. — 18. Go and tell him that I have enough of it. — 19. The court had been deliberating for<sup>5</sup> many days. — 20. I shall make him accept that pension — the one they are going to offer him.

#### LESSON 59.

**Articles :** review Chapter 8 of the *Grammar*.

#### LESSON 60.

**Adjectives :** review Chapter 9 of the *Grammar*.

#### EXERCISE XXX.

Translate the following sentences into French : —

1. I give you my hand. — 2. The Prince of Monaco has banished as many criminals as the most despotic sovereign. — 3. He has ordered me to give them to him. — 4. It's an old decision; I'll speak to you about it Saturday.<sup>6</sup> — 5. I have done worse than that: I have had him expelled more than ten times. — 6. I had invited Mr. L., the Chief Justice of Monaco. — 7. They have men and generals. What an

<sup>1</sup> *July* = 'juillet' (jüi-yè).

<sup>3</sup> *To let* = 'laisser' (lè-sé).

<sup>5</sup> Use 'depuis' (de-püi).

<sup>2</sup> *Henry* = 'Henri' (â-ri).

<sup>4</sup> *Charles* = 'Charles' (charl).

<sup>6</sup> *Saturday* = 'samedi' (sam-di), m.

army! How fine it is!— 8. These people live more quietly than we; they are the best and happiest family that I have ever<sup>1</sup> seen.— 9. What a big square<sup>2</sup>! It is Republic Square.<sup>2</sup>— 10. “You are an Italian,” I said to him, taking his hand.— 11. The best kings reign in peace: the more despotic people are, the more they fear revolutions.— 12. There have been many revolutions in France, but there will be no more.— 13. Have you any vegetables? Yes, but they are quite green; I haven’t any good ones.— 14. The Prince of Monaco is not worse than other monarchs; he is less vindictive than Louis XIV.— 15. Such prisoners cost us ten francs a day.— 16. France is a beautiful country; do you know French?— 17. Our dear prince has given orders to preserve all the old Monaco traditions.— 18. Such an operation costs twenty-five francs an hour.— 19. The king, minister, and general were speaking French.— 20. I told him not to send me any green vegetables.— 21. Have you any wooden chairs? They cost five francs.— 22. The French court was entirely prostrated; the Monaco one had not met; the old minister was indignant.— 23. The banished criminal has no more friends; he has no family at all.— 24. They are speaking of this French lady in the whole principality of Monaco; how good and sweet she is!— 25. Kings fear revolutions; generals fear invasions: the good fear no one.— 26. King Louis was a handsome man; he had small, white hands.— 27. You will find at Monaco a happy little king and court, and you will see some fine soldiers there.— 28. The little boy and the little girl have been eating vegetables; they were all alone.— 29. The French Republic has done better than the Italian government.— 30. Men are happy when they are not robbed of their liberty.— 31. Prince William is without a minister; he hasn’t a friend.— 32. They execute hardly any criminals at Monaco; it’s a very dear operation.— 33. Little William and I are going to Prussia.— 34. There was nothing new in the prison; there was only a white chair and mattress.— 35. Which operation will cost us dearest, the first or the last?— 36. He comes to see me twice a day; Saturdays<sup>3</sup> he comes three times.— 37. This little republic is less ancient and less vindictive than any other; it is an exceptional republic.— 38. Vice is a more despotic monarch than all the kings of the earth.— 39. He is a minister of foreign affairs; he has in his palace some beautiful Louis XIV. chairs.— 40. Every great republic has good ministers; it has some old and some young ones.

<sup>1</sup> *Ever* = ‘jamais.’

<sup>2</sup> *Square* = ‘place,’ f.

<sup>3</sup> *Saturday* = ‘samedi’ (sam-di), m.









50



GETTY CENTER LIBRARY



3 3125 00892 9263

